

# 2 Business Transaction Protocol

## 3 An OASIS Committee Specification

4 ***CURRENT STATUS : committee draft for review***

5 Version 1.0 [0.9.6.2]

6 DD Mmm 2002 [16 May 2002 18:42]

|  |                           |
|--|---------------------------|
| <i>Working Draft 0.9</i>   | <i>24 October 2001</i>    |
| <i>Working Draft 0.9.1 – includes all issues agreed 16 Jan 2002, and 82 (deferred)</i>   | <i>18 January 2002</i>    |
| <i>Working Draft 0.9.2 – all issues as agreed 13 February 2002</i>   | <i>13 February 2002</i>   |
| <i>Working Draft 0.9.2.1 – issues 2, 3, 15, 19, 50, 67, 95</i>   | <i>26 February 2002</i>   |
| <i>Working Draft 0.9.2.2 – as accepted 27 Feb 2002+ corrections, issues 29, 60, 97, 99</i>   | <i>12 March 2002</i>      |
| <i>Working Draft 0.9.2.3 – 0.9.2.2 and issue 106, 96, 98</i>   | <i>18 March 2002</i>      |
| <i>Working Draft 0.9.2.4 – as accepted 27 Mar 2002 + 61, 87, 100, 107, 108, 109, inclusion of model</i>  | <i>3 April 2002</i>       |
| <i>Review Draft 0.9.5 – review draft – all changes merged</i>  | <i>3 April 2002</i>       |
| <i>Review Draft 0.9.5.1 –revised soln for 87, 2nd solution for 108, additional diagrams for 66, formatting cleanup, inferior-handle, garbles.</i>  | <i>22 April 2002</i>      |
| <i>Review Draft 0.9.6 – Review draft 2 (editorial corrections marked)</i>  | <i>1 May 2002</i>         |
| <i>Review Draft 0.9.6.1 – and a few more editorials, state table E1, E2, R2 corrections</i>  | <i>14 May 2002</i>        |
| <b><i>Review Draft 0.9.6.2 – revised core xml schema, more editorial corrections, changes agreed at Newcastle ftf, including node state serialisation annex.<br/>Agreed to be issued as OASIS Committee Specification BTP 1.0, subject to minor editorial corrections and under the conditions of the motion approved by the TC on 16<sup>th</sup> May</i></b> | <b><i>16 May 2002</i></b> |

7

8 [Change marks relative to 0.9.5.1](#)

9

9 **Copyright and related notices**

10 Copyright © The Organization for the Advancement of Structured Information Standards  
11 (OASIS), 2002. All Rights Reserved.

12 This document and translations of it may be copied and furnished to others, and derivative works  
13 that comment on or otherwise explain it or assist in its implementation may be prepared, copied,  
14 published and distributed, in whole or in part, without restriction of any kind, provided that the  
15 above copyright notice and this paragraph are included on all such copies and derivative works.  
16 However, this document itself may not be modified in any way, such as by removing the  
17 copyright notice or references to OASIS, except as needed for the purpose of developing OASIS  
18 specifications, in which case the procedures for copyrights defined in the OASIS Intellectual  
19 Property Rights document must be followed, or as required to translate it into languages other  
20 than English.

21 The limited permissions granted above are perpetual and will not be revoked by OASIS or its  
22 successors or assigns.

23 This document and the information contained herein is provided on an "AS IS" basis and OASIS  
24 **DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT**  
25 **LIMITED TO ANY WARRANTY THAT THE USE OF THE INFORMATION HEREIN WILL**  
26 **NOT INFRINGE ANY RIGHTS OR ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF**  
27 **MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.**

28

29 OASIS takes no position regarding the validity or scope of any intellectual property or other  
30 rights that might be claimed to pertain to the implementation or use of the technology described  
31 in this document or the extent to which any license under such rights might or might not be  
32 available; neither does it represent that it has made any effort to identify any such rights.  
33 Information on OASIS's procedures with respect to rights in OASIS specifications can be found  
34 at the OASIS website. Copies of claims of rights made available for publication and any  
35 assurances of licenses to be made available, or the result of an attempt made to obtain a general  
36 license or permission for the use of such proprietary rights by implementors or users of this  
37 specification, can be obtained from the OASIS Executive Director.

38 OASIS invites any interested party to bring to its attention any copyrights, patents or patent  
39 applications, or other proprietary rights which may cover technology that may be required to  
40 implement this specification. Please address the information to the OASIS Executive Director.

41

41 **Acknowledgements**

42 The members of the OASIS Business Transactions Technical Committee contributed to the  
43 development of this specification. The following were members of the committee for at least part  
44 of the time from July 2001 until the agreement of the specification are listed below. Some TC  
45 members changed their affiliation to OASIS members, but remained members of the TC; [multiple](#)  
46 [affiliations are shown separated by semi-colons](#):

|                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| Mike Abbott        | CodeMetamorphosis   |
| Alex Berson        | Entrust, Inc  |
| Geoff Brown        | Oracle  |
| Doug Bunting       | Sun Microsystems  |
| Fred Carter        | Sun Microsystems; individual                                  |
| Alex Ceponkus      | Bowstreet Inc.; individual                                    |
| Pyounguk Cho       | Iona  |
| Victor Corrales    | Hewlett-Packard Co.   |
| Bill Cox           | BEA Systems, Inc.   |
| Sanjay Dalal       | BEA Systems, Inc.   |
| Alan Davies        | SeeBeyond Inc.  |
| Hatem El-Sebaaly   | IPNet   |
| Ed Felt            | BEA Systems, Inc.   |
| Tony Fletcher      | Choreology Ltd  |
| Bill Flood         | Sybase  |
| Peter Furniss      | Choreology Ltd  |
| Alastair Green     | Choreology Ltd  |
| Mark Hale          | Interwoven Inc.   |
| Gordon Hamilton    | AppliedTheory; individual                                     |
| Roddy Herries      | Choreology Ltd  |
| Mark Little        | Hewlett-Packard Co.   |
| Anne Manes         | Systinet  |
| Savas Parastatidis | Hewlett-Packard Co.   |
| Bill Pope          | Bowstreet <a href="#">Inc</a> ; individual                    |
| Mark Potts         | Individual; Talking Blocks                                    |
| Pal Takacsi-Nagy   | BEA Systems, Inc.   |
| James Tauber       | Bowstreet; <a href="#">individual</a> <a href="#">mValent</a> |
| Sazi Temel         | BEA Systems, Inc.   |
| Steve Viens        | Individual  |
| Jim Webber         | Hewlett-Packard Co.   |
| Steve White        | SeeBeyond Inc.  |

47

48 The primary authors and editors of the main body of the specification were, in alphabetical order

- 49 Alex Ceponkus (alex@ceponkus.org)  
50 Sanjay Dalal (sanjay.dalal@bea.com)  
51 Tony Fletcher (tony.fletcher@choreology.com)  
52 Peter Furniss (peter.furniss@choreology.com)  
53 Alastair Green (alastair.green@choreology.com)  
54 Bill Pope (zpope@pobox.com)

55

56 We thank Pal Takacsi-Nagy of BEA Systems Inc and Bill Pope for their efforts in chairing the  
57 Technical Committee, and Karl Best of OASIS for his guidance on the organization of the  
58 Committee's work.

59

*In memory of Ed Felt*

60

Ed Felt of BEA Systems Inc. was an active and highly valued contributor to the work of the  
61 OASIS Business Transactions Technical Committee.

61

62

His many years of design and implementation experience with the Tuxedo system, Weblogic's  
63 Java transactions, and Weblogic Integration's Conversation Management Protocol were brought  
64 to bear in his comments on and proposals for this specification.

63

64

65

He was killed in the crash of the hijacked United Airlines flight 93 near to Pittsburgh,

66

on 11 September 2001.

67

67 **Typographical and Linguistic Conventions and Style**

68 The initial letters of words in terms which are defined (at least in their substantive or infinitive  
69 form) in the Glossary are capitalized whenever the term used with that exact meaning, thus:

70 Cancel  
71 Participant  
72 Application Message

73 The first occurrence of a word defined in the Glossary is given in bold, thus:

74 **Coordinator**

75 Such words may be given in bold in other contexts (for example, in section headings or captions)  
76 to emphasize their status as formally defined terms.

77 The names of abstract BTP protocol messages are given in upper-case throughout:

78 BEGIN  
79 CONTEXT  
80 RESIGN

81 The values of elements within a BTP protocol message are indicated thus:

82 BEGIN/atom

83 BTP protocol messages that are related semantically are joined by an ampersand:

84 BEGIN/atom & CONTEXT

85 BTP protocol messages that are transmitted together in a compound are joined by a + sign:

86 ENROL + VOTE

87 XML schemata and instances are given in Courier and are shaded:

88 `<btpe:begin> ... </btpe:begin>`

89 Terms such as **MUST**, **MAY** and so on, which are defined in RFC [TBD number], “[TBD title]”  
90 are used with the meanings given in that document but are given in lowercase bold, rather than in  
91 upper-case:

92 An Inferior **must** send one of **RESIGN**, **PREPARED** or **CANCELLED** to its  
93 Superior.

94

|     |   |           |
|-----|---|-----------|
| 94  | <b>Contents</b>   |           |
| 95  | Copyright and related notices.....                                  | 2         |
| 96  | Acknowledgements .....  | 3         |
| 97  | Typographical and Linguistic Conventions and Style .....            | 5         |
| 98  | Contents .....  | 6         |
| 99  | <b>Part 1. Purpose and Features of BTP .....</b>                    | <b>11</b> |
| 100 | Introduction.....   | 11        |
| 101 | Deferred topics .....   | 12        |
| 102 | Conformance.....  | 12        |
| 103 | Interoperation.....   | 12        |
| 104 | Security .....  | 12        |
| 105 | Transaction coordinator migration.....                              | 12        |
| 106 | Development and Maintenance of the Specification.....               | 12        |
| 107 | Structure of this specification.....                                | 14        |
| 108 | Conceptual Model .....  | 15        |
| 109 | Example Core .....  | 15        |
| 110 | Business transactions.....  | 17        |
| 111 | External Effects .....  | 17        |
| 112 | Two-phase outcome .....   | 18        |
| 113 | Actors and roles.....   | 19        |
| 114 | Superior:Inferior relationship .....                                | 19        |
| 115 | Business transaction trees.....                                     | 20        |
| 116 | Atoms and Cohesions .....   | 22        |
| 117 | Participants, Sub-Coordinators and Sub-Composers.....               | 23        |
| 118 | Business transaction creation .....                                 | 23        |
| 119 | Business transaction propagation .....                              | 25        |
| 120 | Creation of Intermediates (Sub-Coordinators and Sub-Composers)..... | 26        |
| 121 | “Checking” and context-reply .....                                  | 27        |
| 122 | Message sequence .....  | 27        |
| 123 | Control of inferiors .....  | 32        |
| 124 | Evolution of confirm-set.....                                       | 35        |
| 125 | Confirm-set of intermediates .....                                  | 39        |
| 126 | Optimisations and variations .....                                  | 42        |
| 127 | Spontaneous prepared.....   | 42        |
| 128 | One-shot .....  | 43        |
| 129 | Resignation.....  | 44        |
| 130 | One-phase confirmation .....  | 45        |
| 131 | Autonomous cancel, autonomous confirm and contradictions.....       | 45        |
| 132 | Recovery and failure handling .....                                 | 46        |
| 133 | Types of failure .....  | 46        |
| 134 | Persistent information.....   | 47        |
| 135 | Recovery messages.....  | 48        |
| 136 | Redirection .....   | 49        |
| 137 | Terminator:Decider failures and transaction timelimit .....         | 50        |
| 138 | Contradictions and hazard .....                                     | 50        |
| 139 | Relation of BTP to application and carrier protocols .....          | 52        |
| 140 | Other elements .....  | 54        |
| 141 | Identifiers.....  | 54        |

|     |  |           |
|-----|--|-----------|
| 142 | Addresses.....   | 55        |
| 143 | Qualifiers.....  | 56        |
| 144 | <b>Part 2. Normative Specification of BTP .....</b>              | <b>57</b> |
| 145 | Actors, Roles and Relationships.....                             | 57        |
| 146 | Relationships.....   | 57        |
| 147 | Roles .....  | 59        |
| 148 | Roles involved in the outcome relationships.....                 | 60        |
| 149 | Superior.....  | 60        |
| 150 | Inferior.....  | 61        |
| 151 | Enroller.....  | 61        |
| 152 | Participant.....   | 62        |
| 153 | Sub-coordinator.....   | 62        |
| 154 | Sub-composer.....  | 63        |
| 155 | Roles involved in the control relationships.....                 | 63        |
| 156 | Decider.....   | 63        |
| 157 | Coordinator.....   | 64        |
| 158 | Composer.....  | 64        |
| 159 | Terminator.....  | 65        |
| 160 | Initiator.....   | 65        |
| 161 | Factory.....   | 66        |
| 162 | Other roles .....  | 66        |
| 163 | Redirector.....  | 66        |
| 164 | Status Requestor.....  | 67        |
| 165 | Summary of relationships.....                                    | 68        |
| 166 | Abstract Messages and Associated Contracts.....                  | 69        |
| 167 | Addresses.....   | 69        |
| 168 | Request/response pairs.....                                      | 70        |
| 169 | Compounding messages .....                                       | 71        |
| 170 | Extensibility.....   | 73        |
| 171 | Messages.....  | 73        |
| 172 | Qualifiers.....  | 73        |
| 173 | Messages not restricted to outcome or control relationships..... | 74        |
| 174 | CONTEXT.....   | 74        |
| 175 | CONTEXT_REPLY.....   | 75        |
| 176 | REQUEST_STATUS.....  | 76        |
| 177 | STATUS.....  | 77        |
| 178 | FAULT.....   | 79        |
| 179 | REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES, INFERIOR_STATUSES.....                | 81        |
| 180 | Messages used in the outcome relationships .....                 | 81        |
| 181 | ENROL.....   | 81        |
| 182 | ENROLLED.....  | 82        |
| 183 | RESIGN.....  | 83        |
| 184 | RESIGNED.....  | 84        |
| 185 | PREPARE.....   | 85        |
| 186 | PREPARED.....  | 85        |
| 187 | CONFIRM.....   | 87        |
| 188 | CONFIRMED.....   | 87        |
| 189 | CANCEL.....  | 88        |
| 190 | CANCELLED.....   | 89        |

|     |   |     |
|-----|---|-----|
| 191 | CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE.....  | 90  |
| 192 | HAZARD.....   | 91  |
| 193 | CONTRADICTION.....  | 93  |
| 194 | SUPERIOR_STATE.....   | 93  |
| 195 | INFERIOR_STATE.....   | 95  |
| 196 | REDIRECT.....   | 97  |
| 197 | Messages used in control relationships.....                       | 98  |
| 198 | BEGIN.....  | 98  |
| 199 | BEGUN.....  | 99  |
| 200 | PREPARE_INFERIORS.....  | 100 |
| 201 | CONFIRM_TRANSACTION.....  | 101 |
| 202 | TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED.....  | 103 |
| 203 | CANCEL_TRANSACTION.....   | 104 |
| 204 | CANCEL_INFERIORS.....   | 105 |
| 205 | TRANSACTION_CANCELLED.....  | 106 |
| 206 | REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES.....                                    | 107 |
| 207 | INFERIOR_STATUSES.....  | 108 |
| 208 | Groups – combinations of related messages.....                    | 110 |
| 209 | CONTEXT & application message.....                                | 110 |
| 210 | CONTEXT_REPLY & ENROL.....  | 111 |
| 211 | CONTEXT_REPLY (& ENROL) & PREPARED / & CANCELLED.....             | 112 |
| 212 | CONTEXT_REPLY & ENROL & application message (& PREPARED).....     | 112 |
| 213 | BEGUN & CONTEXT.....  | 113 |
| 214 | BEGIN & CONTEXT.....  | 113 |
| 215 | Standard qualifiers.....  | 113 |
| 216 | Transaction timelimit.....  | 113 |
| 217 | Inferior timeout.....   | 114 |
| 218 | Minimum inferior timeout.....                                     | 115 |
| 219 | Inferior name.....  | 115 |
| 220 | State Tables.....   | 116 |
| 221 | Status queries.....   | 117 |
| 222 | Decision events.....  | 117 |
| 223 | Disruptions – failure events.....                                 | 118 |
| 224 | Invalid cells and assumptions of the communication mechanism..... | 118 |
| 225 | Meaning of state table events.....                                | 118 |
| 226 | Persistent information.....                                       | 122 |
| 227 | Superior state table.....   | 126 |
| 228 | Inferior state table.....   | 130 |
| 229 | Persistent information.....                                       | 135 |
| 230 | XML representation of Message Set.....                            | 135 |
| 231 | Addresses.....  | 136 |
| 232 | Qualifiers.....   | 136 |
| 233 | Identifiers.....  | 137 |
| 234 | Message References.....   | 137 |
| 235 | Messages.....   | 137 |
| 236 | CONTEXT.....  | 137 |
| 237 | CONTEXT_REPLY.....  | 137 |
| 238 | REQUEST_STATUS.....   | 138 |
| 239 | STATUS.....   | 138 |



|     |  |            |
|-----|--|------------|
| 240 | FAULT .....  | 138        |
| 241 | ENROL.....   | 139        |
| 242 | ENROLLED.....  | 140        |
| 243 | RESIGN.....  | 140        |
| 244 | RESIGNED .....   | 140        |
| 245 | PREPARE .....  | 141        |
| 246 | PREPARED.....  | 141        |
| 247 | CONFIRM.....   | 141        |
| 248 | CONFIRMED .....  | 141        |
| 249 | CANCEL.....  | 142        |
| 250 | CANCELLED .....  | 142        |
| 251 | CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE.....   | 142        |
| 252 | HAZARD .....   | 143        |
| 253 | CONTRADICTION .....  | 143        |
| 254 | SUPERIOR_STATE .....   | 143        |
| 255 | INFERIOR_STATE .....   | 144        |
| 256 | REDIRECT .....   | 144        |
| 257 | BEGIN.....   | 144        |
| 258 | BEGUN .....  | 145        |
| 259 | PREPARE_INFERIORS.....   | 145        |
| 260 | CONFIRM_TRANSACTION.....   | 145        |
| 261 | TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED .....                                      | 146        |
| 262 | CANCEL_TRANSACTION.....  | 146        |
| 263 | CANCEL_INFERIORS .....   | 146        |
| 264 | TRANSACTION_CANCELLED.....                                       | 147        |
| 265 | REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES.....                                   | 147        |
| 266 | INFERIOR_STATUSES.....   | 147        |
| 267 | Standard qualifiers.....   | 148        |
| 268 | Transaction timelimit .....                                      | 148        |
| 269 | Inferior timeout.....  | 148        |
| 270 | Minimum inferior timeout.....                                    | 148        |
| 271 | Inferior name .....  | 148        |
| 272 | Compounding of Messages.....                                     | 148        |
| 273 | XML Schemas .....  | 149        |
| 274 | XML schema for BTP messages .....                                | 149        |
| 275 | XML schema for standard qualifiers.....                          | 161        |
| 276 | Carrier Protocol Bindings .....                                  | 163        |
| 277 | Carrier Protocol Binding Proforma.....                           | 163        |
| 278 | Bindings for request/response carrier protocols .....            | 164        |
| 279 | Request/response exploitation rules .....                        | 165        |
| 280 | SOAP Binding .....   | 166        |
| 281 | Example scenario using SOAP binding .....                        | 168        |
| 282 | SOAP + Attachments Binding.....                                  | 170        |
| 283 | Conformance.....   | 171        |
| 284 | <b>Part 3. Glossary .....</b>                                    | <b>174</b> |
| 285 | <b>Part 4. Annexes .....</b>                                     | <b>183</b> |
| 286 | Informational annex A Node State Information Serialisation ..... | 183        |
| 287 | NODE STATE INFORMATION .....                                     | 183        |
| 288 | Abstract Format for Node State Information.....                  | 183        |

|     |  |     |
|-----|--|-----|
| 289 | Informal XML for Node State Information..... | 185 |
| 290 | XML schema for Node State Information.....   | 186 |
| 291 |  |     |
| 292 |  |     |

## 292 Part 1. Purpose and Features of BTP

### 293 Introduction

294 This document, which describes and defines the Business Transaction Protocol (BTP), is a  
295 Committee Specification of the Organization for the Advancement of Structured Information  
296 Standards (OASIS). The standard has been authored by the collective work of representatives of  
297 numerous software product companies (listed on page 3), grouped in the Business Transactions  
298 Technical Committee (BT TC) of OASIS.

299 The OASIS BTP Technical Committee began its work at an inaugural meeting in San Jose, Calif.  
300 on 13 March 2001, and this specification was endorsed as a Committee Specification by a [\*\*\*  
301 unanimous] vote on [\*\*\* date].

302 BTP is designed to allow coordination of application work between multiple participants owned  
303 or controlled by autonomous organizations. BTP uses a two-phase outcome coordination protocol  
304 to ensure the overall application achieves a consistent result. BTP permits the consistent outcome  
305 to be defined *a priori* -- all the work is confirmed or none is -- (an atomic business transaction or  
306 atom) or for application intervention into the selection of the work to be confirmed (a cohesive  
307 business transaction or cohesion).

308 BTP's ability to coordinate between services offered by autonomous organizations makes it  
309 ideally suited for use in a Web Services environment. For this reason this specification defines  
310 communications protocol bindings which target the emerging Web Services arena, while  
311 preserving the capacity to carry BTP messages over other communication protocols. Protocol  
312 message structure and content constraints are schematized in XML, and message content is  
313 encoded in XML instances.

314 The BTP allows great flexibility in the implementation of business transaction participants. Such  
315 participants enable the consistent reversal of the effects of atoms. BTP participants may use  
316 recorded before- or after-images, or compensation operations to provide the "roll-forward, roll-  
317 back" capacity which enables their subordination to the overall outcome of an atomic business  
318 transaction.

319 The BTP is an interoperation protocol which defines the roles which software agents (actors) may  
320 occupy, the messages that pass between such actors, and the obligations upon and commitments  
321 made by actors-in-roles. It does not define the programming interfaces to be used by application  
322 programmers to stimulate message flow or associated state changes.

323 The BTP is based on a permissive and minimal approach, where constraints on implementation  
324 choices are avoided. The protocol also tries to avoid unnecessary dependencies on other  
325 standards, with the aim of lowering the hurdle to implementation.

326

## 326 **Deferred topics**

327 Certain issues were considered in the development of this document, but final and complete  
328 resolutions were not included in this edition. These areas are potential subjects for future work of  
329 the BTP Technical Committee.

## 330 **Conformance**

331 The BT Technical Committee recognizes that the approach to conformance taken in this  
332 Committee Specification (see section “Conformance” in part 2) may not fully meet the needs of  
333 consumers of an eventual OASIS Standard. We plan to evaluate the conformance requirements  
334 along with comments from implementers and users with a mind to decreasing the number of  
335 conformance points. Comments on this subject will be appreciated.

## 336 **Interoperation**

337 BTP is an interoperation protocol: assuming unambiguous specification and faithful  
338 implementation any two independent implementations using an agreed carrier-protocol binding  
339 should exchange and process BTP messages (sometimes in association with application  
340 messages) in such a way that they are mutually intelligible, are processed in sequence and with  
341 consequences as defined in this specification to give effect to agreed business-defined  
342 coordinated updates in all parties participating in a transaction.

343 In its work the BT Technical Committee began discussion of the issues involved in testing  
344 interoperability between implementations of BTP 1.0. Such testing can only be effected when  
345 using an agreed application protocol and data, and a common carrier protocol. Implementations of  
346 the carrier protocol concerned (e.g. SOAP 1.1/HTTP 1.1) may themselves be non-interoperable,  
347 and that issue can only be addressed independently by the body or bodies responsible for  
348 establishing interoperability for such a carrier protocol.

## 349 **Security**

350 The BT Technical Committee has consciously deferred addressing integration with security  
351 standards or technology. BTP version 1.0 therefore assumes that all actors are within a trust  
352 domain. Comments on this topic are invited.

## 353 **Transaction coordinator migration**

354 Migration of the transaction coordination roles is an important feature for scalable transaction  
355 systems. The BT Technical Committee plans to examine this issue before moving to an OASIS  
356 standard. Please see the Informative Annex A for a first step in this direction.

## 357 **Development and Maintenance of the Specification**

358 For more information on the genesis and development of BTP, please consult the OASIS BT  
359 Technical Committee’s website, at

360 <http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/business-transactions/>

361 As of the date of adoption of this specification the OASIS BT Technical Committee is still in  
362 existence, with the charter of

- 363           □ maintaining the specification in the light of implementation experiences
- 364           □ coordinating publicity for BTP
- 365           □ liaising with other standards bodies whose work affects or may be affected by  
366           BTP
- 367           □ reviewing the appropriate time, in the light of implementation experience and  
368           user support, to put BTP forward for adoption as a full OASIS standard

369    If you have a question about the functionality of BTP, or wish to report an error or to suggest a  
370    modification to the specification, please [send a message to \(and, if you wish, subscribe to\):](#)

371           [business-transaction-comment-spec@lists.oasis-open.org](mailto:business-transaction-comment-spec@lists.oasis-open.org)

372    Any employee of a corporate member of OASIS, or any individual member of OASIS, may  
373    subscribe to OASIS mail lists, and is also entitled to apply to join the Technical Committee.

374    The main list of the committee is:

375           [business-transaction@lists.oasis-open.org](mailto:business-transaction@lists.oasis-open.org)

376

## 376 **Structure of this specification**

377 This specification document includes, in Part 1, an explanation and description of the conceptual  
378 model of BTP, and, in Part 2, a fully normative specification of the protocol.

379 The use and definition of terms in the model can be regarded as authoritative but should not be  
380 taken to restrict implementations or uses of BTP. In case of (unintended) disagreement between  
381 the parts, Part 2 takes precedence over Part 1.

382 Part 1 contains

- 383 • Executive Summary
- 384 • This document structure description
- 385 • Conceptual Model

386 Part 2 contains the following sections:

- 387 • Actors, roles and relationships: defines the model entities used in the specification,  
388 their relationships to each other and indicates the correspondence of these to real  
389 implementation constructs; this section also lists which messages are sent and received  
390 for each role.
- 391 • Abstract message set: defines a set of abstract messages that are exchanged between  
392 software agents performing the various roles to create, progress and complete the  
393 relationships between those roles. For each abstract message the parameters are defined  
394 and the associated “contract” is stated – the contract defines the meaning of the  
395 message in terms of what the receiver can infer of the sender’s state and the intended  
396 effect on the receiver. This section does not itself specify a particular encoding or  
397 representation of the messages nor a single mechanism for communicating the  
398 messages
- 399 • State tables: specifies the state transitions for the Superior and Inferior roles, detailing  
400 when particular messages may be sent and when internal decisions may be made that  
401 affect the state
- 402 • XML representation: defines an XML representation of the message set. Other  
403 representations of the message set, or parts of it are possible – these may or may not be  
404 suitable for interoperation between heterogeneous implementations.
- 405 • Carrier protocol bindings: defines a “carrier binding proforma” that details the  
406 information required to specify the mapping to a particular carrier protocol such that  
407 independent implementations can interoperate. The proforma requires an identification  
408 for the binding, the nature of the addressing information used with the binding, how the  
409 messages are represented and encoded and how they are carried (e.g. which carrier  
410 protocol messages or fields they are in) and may include other requirements.
- 411 • Using the carrier protocol proforma, this section fully specifies bindings to SOAP 1.1,  
412 using the XML representation of the abstract message set.

- 413           • Conformance definitions: defines combinations of facilities (expressed as roles) that an  
414           implementation can declare it supports

415   Part 3 contains a glossary that provides succinct definitions of terms used in the rest of the  
416   document.

417   [Part 4 contains an informational annex that defines a format for the serialised state information of](#)  
418   [a BTP node.](#)

## 419   **Conceptual Model**

420   This section introduces the concepts of BTP. Its use and definition of terms can be regarded as  
421   authoritative but should not be taken to restrict implementations or uses of BTP. Part 2 of the  
422   specification is fully normative and in case of disagreement takes precedence over statements or  
423   examples in this section.

424   BTP is designed to make minimal assumptions about the implementation structure and the  
425   properties of the carrier protocols. This allows BTP to be bound to more than one carrier  
426   protocol. BTP implementations built in quite different ways should be able to interoperate if they  
427   are bound to the same carrier protocol. This flexibility requires that much of the text is abstract  
428   and may be difficult to visualise in the absence of a particular implementation pattern or carrier  
429   protocol. To aid understanding some possible implementation examples are presented in the  
430   following text.

### 431   **Example Core**

432           An advanced manufacturing company (*Manufacturer A*) orders the parts and services it  
433           needs on-line. It has existing relationships with parts suppliers and providers of services  
434           such as shipping and insurance. All of the communications between these organizations  
435           is via XML messages. The interactions of these business transactions include:

- 436           1. *Manufacturer A*'s production scheduling system sends an Order message to a  
437            *Supplier*.
- 438           2. The *Supplier's* order processing system sends back an order confirmation with the  
439            details of the order.
- 440           3. *Manufacturer A* orders delivery from a *Shipper* for the ordered parts.
- 441           4. The *Shipper* evaluates the request and based on its truck schedule it sends back a  
442            positive or negative reply.
- 443           5. Some shipments need to be insured based on their value, where they are shipped  
444            from, and method of transportation. *Manufacturer A* sends an Order message to an  
445            *Insurer* when this is necessary.
- 446           6. The *Insurer* responds with a bid or a no-bid response.

447           Problems have arisen with some of these interactions.

- 448
- 449
- 450
- 451
- 452
- 453
- 454
- 455
- 456
- Manufacturer A had ordered parts from a supplier and contacted shipper M about delivering the goods. Shipper M was busy and agreed to the contract but only for a scheduled delivery the day after the parts were needed. By the time this was addressed it was too late to schedule alternate shipping.
  - There were communications problems with supplier Z that resulted in an order not being confirmed. The shipper arrived to pick up the order and supplier Z knew nothing about it.
  - Goods have been shipped without insurance when company policy dictated that insurance was required.

457

458

459

These problems occur because of the unreliable nature of the Internet and the lack of visibility a company has into the workings and state of an outside organization. By using BTP in support of this supply application, these problems can be ameliorated.

460

461

462

463

464

465

466

467

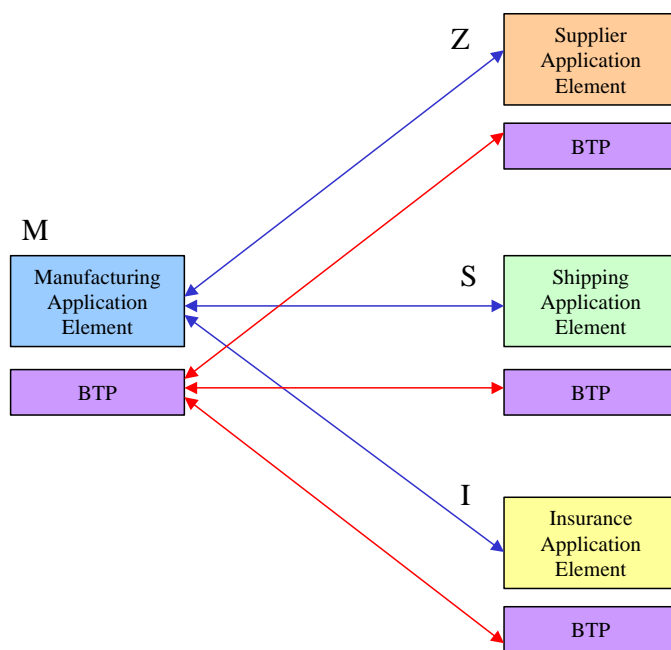
468

469

470

471

BTP is a protocol, that is, a set of specific messages that get exchanged between computer systems supporting an application, with rules about the meaning and use of the messages. The computer systems will also exchange application-specific messages. Thus, within the example, the Manufacturer's system and the Supplier's system (say), will exchange messages detailing what the goods are, how many, what price and will also exchange BTP messages. The parts of the application in both systems that handle these different sets of messages can be distinguished, as in Figure 1. In each BTP-using party there is an **application element** and a **BTP element**. The application elements exchange the order information and cause the associated business functions to be performed. The BTP elements, which send and receive the BTP messages, perform specific roles in the protocol. These BTP elements assist the application in getting the work of the application done. The application element, as understood by this model, may include supporting infrastructure elements, such as containers or interceptors, as well as application-specific code.



472

473

**Figure 1 – Manufacturer Example**



## 474 Business transactions

475 A **Business Transaction** can be defined as a consistent change in the state of a business  
476 relationship between two or more **parties**. A business relationship is any distributed state held by  
477 the parties which is subject to contractual constraints agreed by those parties. For example, an  
478 master purchasing agreement, which permits the placing of orders for components by known  
479 buying organizations allows a buyer and a seller to create and subsequently exchange meaningful  
480 information about the creation and processing of an order. Such agreements (and the consequent  
481 specification of shared or canonical data formats and of the messages that carry those formats,  
482 and their permitted sequences, all of which are needed for an automated implementation of an  
483 agreement) stem from business negotiations and are specific to a particular trading or information  
484 exchange community (group of potential parties). This definition of a business relationship is  
485 deliberately silent on the nature of the “business” transacted between the parties: it might be  
486 trading for profit, verification of authorizations for expenditure or loans, consistent publication  
487 (replication) of government ordinances to multiple sites, or any other computerized interaction  
488 where the parties require high confidence of consistent delivery or processing of data. In each  
489 party or site where business relationship state resides an application system must exist which can  
490 maintain that state and communicate it as needed to other parties. The Business Transaction  
491 Protocol (BTP) assists the application systems of the various parties to bring about consistent and  
492 coordinated changes in the relationship as viewed from each party. BTP assumes that for a given  
493 business transaction, state changes occur, or are desired, in computer systems controlled by some  
494 set of parties, and that these changes are related in some application-defined manner. BTP  
495 assumes that the parties involved in a business transaction have distinct and autonomous  
496 application systems, which do not require knowledge of each others’ implementation or internal  
497 state representations in volatile or persistent storage. Access to such loosely coupled application  
498 systems is assumed to occur only through service interfaces.

499 Thus the state changes that BTP is concerned with are only those affecting the immediate  
500 business relationship. Although these externally visible changes will typically correspond to  
501 internal state changes of the parties, use of BTP does not itself imply any constraints or  
502 requirements on the internal state.<sup>1</sup>

## 503 External Effects

504 BTP coordinates the state changes caused by the exchange of application messages. These state  
505 changes are part of the contract between BTP-using parties. In the manufacturing example, an  
506 interaction between the manufacturer and the supplier might involve the supplier receiving the  
507 order (an application message), checking to ensure that it had enough product on hand, reserving  
508 the product in the manufacturer’s name and replying. When the manufacturer agrees to the  
509 purchase (assuming the shipping and insurance are also reserved), BTP messages are sent to  
510 confirm the purchase. In this case, the supplier is offering a **BTP-enabled service** – the  
511 application element and its supporting BTP elements together offer this service.

---

<sup>1</sup> Although a Business Transaction is defined as concerning a business relationship, the facilities of BTP make it suitable for other environments where loosely coupled systems require coordination and consistency.

512 In general, to be able to satisfy such contracts a BTP-enabled **service** must support in some  
 513 manner provisional or tentative state changes (the transaction's **provisional effect**) and  
 514 completion either through confirmation (**final effect**) or cancellation (**counter-effect**). The  
 515 meaning of provisional, final, and counter-effect are specific to the application and to the  
 516 implementation of the application. In the example, the reservation of the order is the provisional  
 517 effect, the completion of the purchase is the final effect.

518 Some of the implementation approaches are shown in Table 1. From the perspective of BTP and  
 519 the initiator application, all these are considered equivalent. Outside of BTP the underlying  
 520 business relationship (or contract) between the parties can constrain the degree to which the  
 521 effects are visible.

522 **Table 1 Some alternatives for provisional, final and counter effects**

| provisional effect  | final effect            | counter effect                         | Comment  |
|---|-------------------------|--|--|
| Store intended changes without performing them                                  | Perform the changes     | Delete the stored changes, unperformed | Provisional effect may include checking for validity |
| Perform the changes, making them visible; store information to undo the changes | Delete undo information | Perform undo action                    | One form of compensation approach                    |
| Store original state, prevent outside access, perform changes                   | Allow access            | Restore original state; allow access   | a typical database approach                          |

523 These alternatives are not the only ones – they can be combined or varied. The visible state of the  
 524 application information prior to confirmation or cancellation may be different from both the  
 525 original state and the final state.

526 Especially in the compensation approach, if the changes are cancelled, the counter-effect may be  
 527 a precise inversion or removal of provisional changes, or it may be the processing of operations  
 528 that in some way compensate for, make good, alleviate or supplement their effect. There may be  
 529 side-effects of various kinds from a counter-effected operation – such as levying of cancellation  
 530 charges or the record of the operation may be visible, but marked as cancelled. The possibility of  
 531 these side-effects is considered to be part of the overarching contract.

### 532 **Two-phase outcome**

533 The BTP protocol coordinates the transitions into and out of the event states described above by  
 534 sending messages between the transaction parties. This involves a two-phase exchange. First the  
 535 application elements exchange messages that determine the characteristics and cause the  
 536 performance of the provisional effect; then a separate message, to the BTP element, asking for  
 537 the performance of the final or the counter effect.

538 In general, the application elements in the systems involved having first communicated the  
539 application messages, each system that has to make changes in its own state:

- 540 • determines whether it is able achieve its provisional effect and then ensure it will be  
541 able either to cancel (counter-effect) its operation or to confirm (give final effect to) its  
542 operation, whichever is subsequently instructed, and
- 543 • reports its ability to confirm-or-cancel (its preparedness) to a central coordinating  
544 entity.

545 And, after receiving these reports, the coordinating entity:

- 546 • determines which of the systems should be instructed to confirm and which should be  
547 instructed to cancel
- 548 • informs each system whether it should confirm or cancel (the “outcome”).by sending a  
549 message to its BTP element

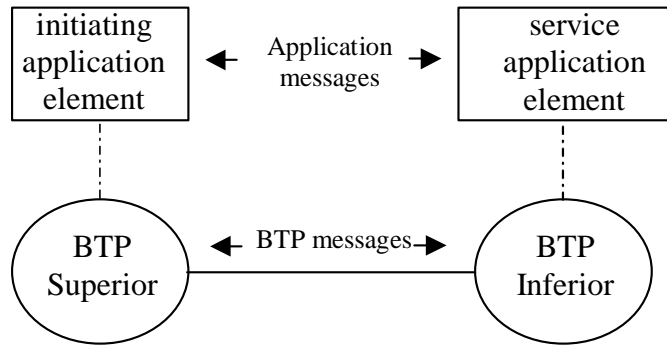
550 When there is more than one system that has to make changes such a two-phase exchange  
551 mediated by a coordinator is required to achieve a consistent outcome for a set of operations.  
552 The two-phases of the BTP protocol ensure that either the entire attempted transaction is  
553 abandoned or a consistent set of participants is confirmed.

## 554 **Actors and roles**

555 BTP centres on the bilateral relationship between the computer systems of the coordinating entity  
556 and those of one of the parties in the overall business transaction. For each bilateral relationship  
557 in a business transaction, a software agent within the coordinating entity’s systems plays the BTP  
558 role of Superior and a software agent within the systems of the party play the BTP role of  
559 Inferior. The concept “**role**” refers strictly to the participation in a particular relationship in a  
560 particular business transaction. The software agent performing a role is termed an **Actor**. An  
561 Actor is distinguished from other Actors by being distinguishably addressable. The same Actor  
562 may perform multiple roles in the same business transaction (including the case where a Superior  
563 is also an Inferior), and may also perform the same or different roles in multiple business  
564 transactions, either concurrently or consecutively.

## 565 **Superior:Inferior relationship**

566 A basic case of a single Superior:Inferior relationship, including the association with application  
567 elements, is illustrated in Figure 2. In many cases, including the manufacturer supply example,  
568 the application element associated with the superior will directly initiate the application  
569 exchanges –as does the manufacturer’s application client to the supplier’s server, for example –  
570 but this is not invariably the case. It is possible that the first direct communication between the  
571 application elements is from one associated with an inferior to the one associated with the  
572 superior – for example, with an application that requested quotes by advertising the identity and  
573 location of the Superior along with invitation to quote; incoming quotes would be the first direct  
574 application message exchanged. In all cases the topmost application element in a tree or subtree  
575 will be aware of the business transaction first. How the identity of the transaction and the address  
576 of the BTP Superior are communicated to the secondary application element is a matter for the  
577 application protocol and not strictly part of BTP, although it will commonly be done by  
578 associating a BTP CONTEXT message with application messages..



579

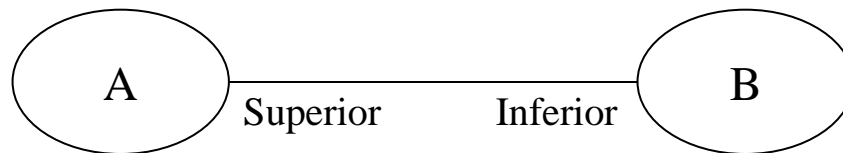
580

**Figure 2 Basic Superior:Inferior relationship for BTP**

581 An Inferior is associated with some set of application activities that create effects within the  
 582 party, for a given business transaction. As stated above, commonly, though not invariably, this  
 583 application activity within the party will be a result of some operation invocations from elsewhere  
 584 (shown as the “initiating application element” in Figure 2), associated with the Superior to an  
 585 application element associated with the Inferior (shown as “Service application element”). This  
 586 second application element determines what activities the Inferior is responsible for, and then the  
 587 Inferior is responsible for reporting to the Superior whether the associated operations’ provisional  
 588 effect can be confirmed/cancelled – this is called “becoming prepared”, because the Inferior has  
 589 to remain prepared to receive whichever order eventually arrives (subject to various exceptions  
 590 and exclusions, detailed below).

591 **Business transaction trees**

592 There are many patterns in which the service provider participants involved in a business  
 593 transaction may be arranged in respect of the two-phase exchange and the determination of which  
 594 are eventually confirmed. The simplest is shown in Figure 3 involving only two parties – one (B)  
 595 making itself subject to the decision of confirm-or-cancel made by the other (A). This basic  
 596 bilateral relationship, in which one side makes itself inferior to the other, is the building block  
 597 used in all business transaction patterns. In this simplest case, the “coordination” by the superior,  
 598 A, is just that A can be sure whether the operations at the inferior, B were eventually cancelled or  
 599 confirmed.

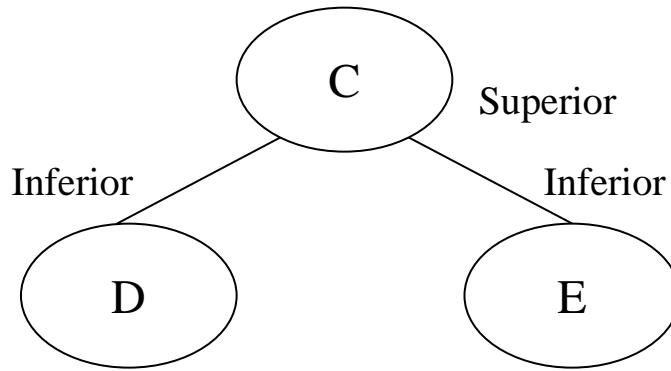


600

601

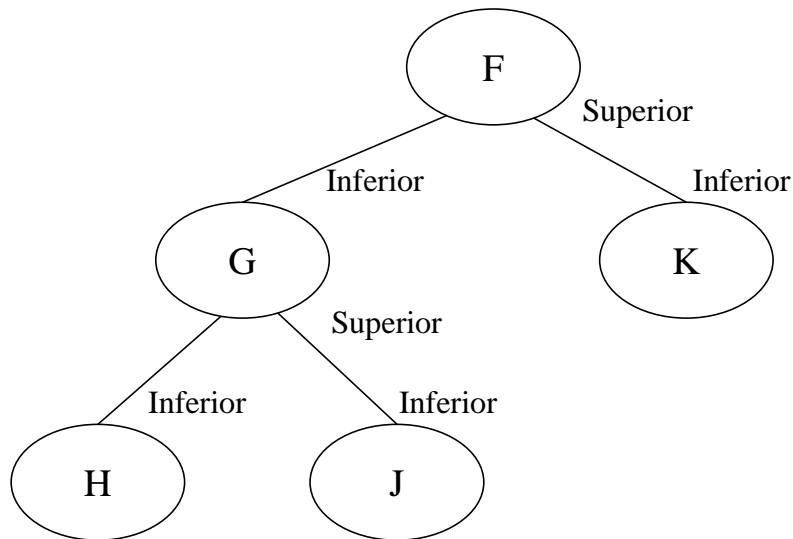
**Figure 3 Simple two-party business transaction**

602 In the next simplest case, as in ~~figure~~Figure 4, a bilateral, Superior:Inferior relationship appears  
 603 twice, with two Inferiors, D and E, both making themselves inferior to a single Superior, C. From  
 604 the perspective of either D or E, they are in the same position as B in the previous case –they are  
 605 unaware of and unaffected (directly) by each other. It is only within C that there is any linkage  
 606 between the confirm-or-cancel outcomes that apply to D and E.



607  
608 **Figure 4 Business transaction with two inferiors**

609 The same Superior:Inferior relationship is used in business transaction trees that are both “wider”  
610 – with more Inferiors reporting their preparedness to be confirm-or-canceled to a single Superior  
611 – and “deeper”. In a “deeper” tree, as in ~~figure~~ Figure 5, an entity (G) that is Superior to one or  
612 more Inferiors (H, J), is itself Inferior to another entity (F) – it is said to be **interposed** or is an  
613 **Intermediate** (either term can be used). In this case, G will collect the information on  
614 preparedness of its Inferiors before passing on its own report to its Superior, F, and awaiting the  
615 outcome as advised by F.



616  
617 **Figure 5 Business transaction with an Intermediate (interposition)**

618 A business transaction tree, made up of these bilateral Superior:Inferior relationships can, in  
619 theory, be arbitrarily “wide” or “deep” – there are no fixed limits to how many Inferiors a single  
620 Superior can have, or how many levels of intermediates there are between the top-most Superior  
621 (that is Inferior to none) and the bottom-most leaf Inferior. The actual creation of the tree depends  
622 on the behaviour and requirements of the application. Given the (potentially) inter-organisational  
623 nature of business transactions, there may be no overall design or control of the structure of the  
624 tree.

625 Each Inferior has only one Superior. However, a single Superior may (and commonly does) have  
626 multiple relationships with Inferiors, and may have such relationships with multiple Inferiors  
627 within each party to the transaction, and with Inferiors within multiple parties.

628 **Atoms and Cohesions**

629 As described in the previous section, the Superior receives reports from its Inferiors as to whether  
630 they are prepared. It gathers these reports in order to ascertain which Inferiors should be cancelled  
631 and which confirmed - those that cannot prepare will have already cancelled themselves. This  
632 determined, directly or indirectly, by the application element responsible of the creation and  
633 control of the Superior, which determines the nature of the Superior. There are two dimensions of  
634 variation in the Superior: is it an Inferior to another Superior; does it treat its own Inferiors  
635 atomically or cohesively. The distinction between atomic and cohesive behaviour is whether the  
636 Superior will choose or allow some Inferiors to cancel while others confirm – this is not allowed  
637 for atomic behaviour, in which all must confirm or all must cancel, but is for cohesive.

638 The possible cases for a Superior, given these two dimensions of variation, are:

- 639 a) the application element initiated the business transaction (causing the creation of  
640 the Superior), and instructed that all Inferiors of the Superior should confirm or  
641 all should cancel; the Superior is an **Atom Coordinator**;
- 642 b) the application element initiated the business transaction, but deferred the choice  
643 of which Inferiors should confirm until later, allowing it (the application element)  
644 to choose some subset to be confirmed, others to cancel; the Superior is a  
645 **Cohesion Composer**;
- 646 c) the application element was itself involved in an existing business transaction,  
647 and the Superior in this relationship is the Inferior in another one; this application  
648 element instructed that all Inferiors of this Superior should confirm, but only if  
649 confirmation is instructed from above or all should cancel; the Superior is an  
650 (atomic) **Sub-coordinator**;
- 651 d) the application element was itself involved in an existing business transaction,  
652 and the Superior in this relationship is the Inferior in another one; this application  
653 element deferred the choice of which Inferiors should be candidates to confirm  
654 until later, allowing it (the application element) to choose some subset to be  
655 confirmed, given that confirmation is instructed from above, others to cancel; the  
656 Superior is a (cohesive) **Sub-composer**.

657 In the atomic case, the two-phase outcome exchange means a Superior acting as an atomic  
658 Coordinator or sub-coordinator will treat any Inferior which cannot prepare to cancel/confirm as  
659 having veto power, causing the Superior to instruct all its Inferiors to cancel. A business  
660 transaction whose topmost Superior is atomic is an Atomic Business Transaction, or Atom – the  
661 superior is the Atom Coordinator.

662 In the cohesion case, with the Superior acting as a cohesive Composer or Sub-Composer, the  
663 controlling application element will determine the implications of an Inferior's failure to be  
664 prepared to confirm-or-cancel; the application element may cancel some or all other Inferiors, do  
665 other application work, which may involve new Inferiors or may just accept the cancellation of  
666 that one Inferior and carry on. A business transaction whose topmost Superior is cohesive is a  
667 Cohesive Business Transaction, or Cohesion – the Superior is the Cohesion Composer.

668 For a cohesion, the set of Inferiors that eventually confirm is called the **confirm-set**. The term is  
669 also used to mean the set of Inferiors that have been chosen to (potentially) confirm before the  
670 final outcome is decided – if the cohesion is eventually cancelled, then confirm-set cancels. (See  
671 section “Evolution of confirm-set”). The confirm-set of an Atom is all of the Inferiors.

672 If the Superior is itself an Inferior, its own action of becoming prepared, and reporting this to its  
673 own Superior will depend on the receipt of prepared reports from its Inferiors. If it is atomic (i.e.  
674 is a sub-coordinator), it will only become prepared if all Inferiors reported preparedness to it; if it  
675 is cohesive (i.e. is a sub-composer), the controlling application element will determine whether  
676 the set of Inferiors that have reported as prepared is sufficient.

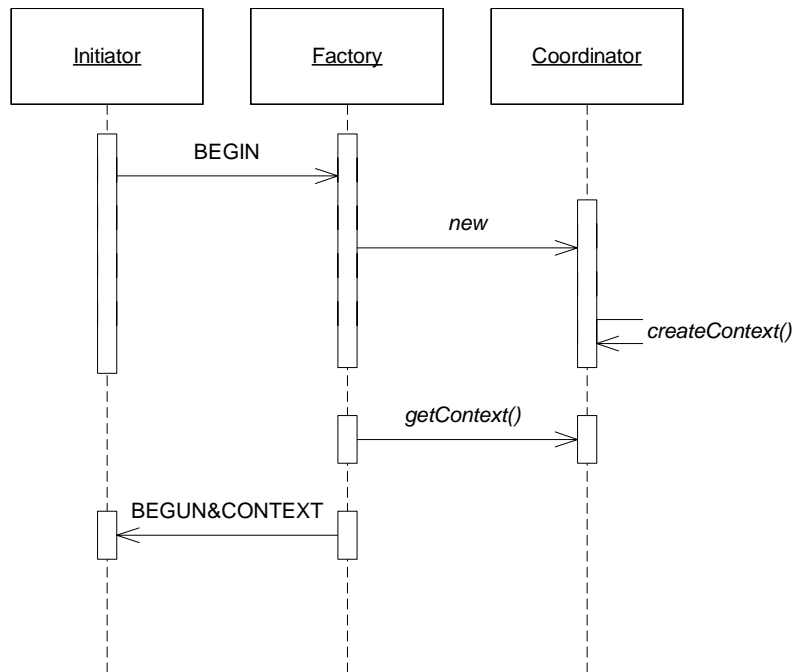
677 If the Superior is not an Inferior, the determination of when, if and, for a Cohesion, what it should  
678 confirm depends on the controlling application. This “top-most” Superior has a different  
679 relationship to the controlling application to that of an Inferior to its Superior: an Inferior reports  
680 that it is prepared to the Superior, which instructs it whether to cancel or to confirm; the top-most  
681 Superior is asked by the application element to attempt to confirm, but, dependent on the  
682 preparedness of its Inferiors, the top-most Superior makes the final decision. Consequently the  
683 top-most Superior is termed the **Decider**; the application element that asks it to confirm is the  
684 **Terminator**.

#### 685 **Participants, Sub-Coordinators and Sub-Composers**

686 An Inferior may directly be responsible for applying the confirm-or-cancel decision to some  
687 application effects, or may in turn be a BTP Superior to which others will enrol. If it only handles  
688 application effects it is called a **Participant**, in the latter case it is called a **Sub-coordinator** or a  
689 **Sub-composer**, depending on whether it is atomic or cohesive with respect to its own future  
690 Inferiors. (If an Inferior is both responsible for application effects, and is a BTP Superior, it is not  
691 considered a Participant, according to the strict definitions, though informally it may be referred  
692 to as such.) The Superior is unaware, via the BTP exchanges, whether the Inferior is a Participant,  
693 Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer. This specification does not define messages or interfaces for  
694 the creation of Participants or for the application element to tell the Participant what the  
695 application effects are or how they are to be confirmed or cancelled as necessary. (Although out-  
696 of-scope for this specification, one or more APIs could be standardised.)

#### 697 **Business transaction creation**

698 This section describes in some detail how a BTP business transaction is created. The interaction  
699 diagram in Figure 6 also shows this sequence. The messages shown in lower-case italics (between  
700 Factory and Coordinator) represent interactions that are not specified in BTP.



**Figure 6 – Creation of a business transaction**

701

702

703 A business transaction is started at the initiative of an application element, which causes the  
 704 creation of a Coordinator or Composer. Any Inferiors participating in this transaction will enrol  
 705 with this Superior. BTP defines abstract messages (BEGIN, BEGUN) to request this but the  
 706 equivalent function can also be achieved using proprietary means, especially if the Factory or  
 707 Coordinator is an internal component of the initiating application. If the BTP messages are used,  
 708 the application element performs the role of Initiator and sends BEGIN to a Factory. The BEGIN  
 709 message identifies whether a Coordinator (for an atom) or a Composer (for a cohesion) is desired.  
 710 The Factory, after the creation of the new Coordinator or Composer, replies with related BEGUN  
 711 and CONTEXT messages. "Related" means they are sent together in a manner that has semantic  
 712 significance; how this is represented is determined by the binding in use. The Coordinator's or  
 713 Composer's creation is the establishment of a new instance of a BTP role. It may involve only the  
 714 assignment of a new identifier within an existing Actor (which may also be performing the  
 715 Factory role, for example). Alternatively a new Actor with a distinct address may be instantiated.  
 716 These and other alternatives are implementation choices, and BTP ensures other Actors are  
 717 unaffected by the choice made.

718 The BEGUN message provides the addressing and identification information needed for a  
 719 Terminator to access the new Coordinator or Composer as Decider; the application element  
 720 performing the Initiator role may itself act as Terminator, or may pass this information to some  
 721 other application element.

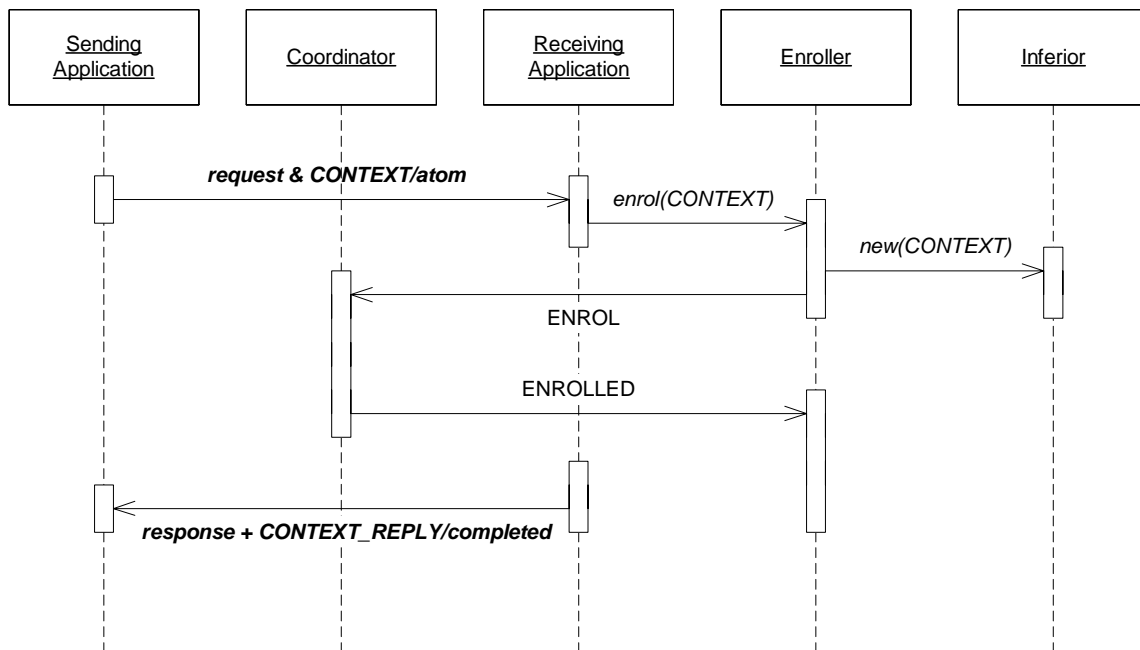
722 Whether this interoperable BTP Initiator:Factory relationship or some other mechanism is used to  
 723 initiate the business transaction, a CONTEXT is made available. This identifies the Coordinator  
 724 or Composer as a Superior – containing both addressing information and the identification of the  
 725 relevant state information. The CONTEXT is also marked as to whether or not this Superior will  
 726 behave atomically with respect to its Inferiors (i.e. is it a Coordinator or Composer).



727 **Business transaction propagation**

728 The propagation of the business transaction from one party to another, to establish the  
729 Superior:Inferior relationships involves the transmission of the CONTEXT. This is commonly in  
730 association with, or related to, one or more application messages between the parties. In a typical  
731 case, an application message is sent from the application element that performed the Initiator role  
732 (the “sending application” in Figure 2) to some other element (the receiving application). The  
733 CONTEXT is sent with the application message in such a way that the application elements  
734 understand that work performed as a result of the application message is to be the subject of a  
735 confirm-or-cancel decision of the Superior.<sup>2</sup> The receiving application element causes the  
736 creation of an Inferior (which, as for the Superior may involve just assignment on a new  
737 identifier, or instantiation of an new Actor) and ensures the new Inferior is enrolled with the  
738 Superior identified in the received CONTEXT, using an ENROL message sent to the Superior  
739 using the address in that CONTEXT.

740 Figure 7 shows a sequence diagram of the propagation of a business transaction. It is assumed the  
741 transaction has already been created, and thus the application element and Coordinator exist. The  
742 diagram shows the Enroller as a distinct role, with non-standardised interactions between the  
743 application element, the Enroller and the new Inferior. The Enroller role may in fact be performed  
744 by the application element, by the Inferior or by a distinct entity. At least the Superior-identifier  
745 and Superior-address from the CONTEXT has to be passed the Enroller and to the Inferior so  
746 they can communicate with the Coordinator (whose identifier and address these are).



747

748

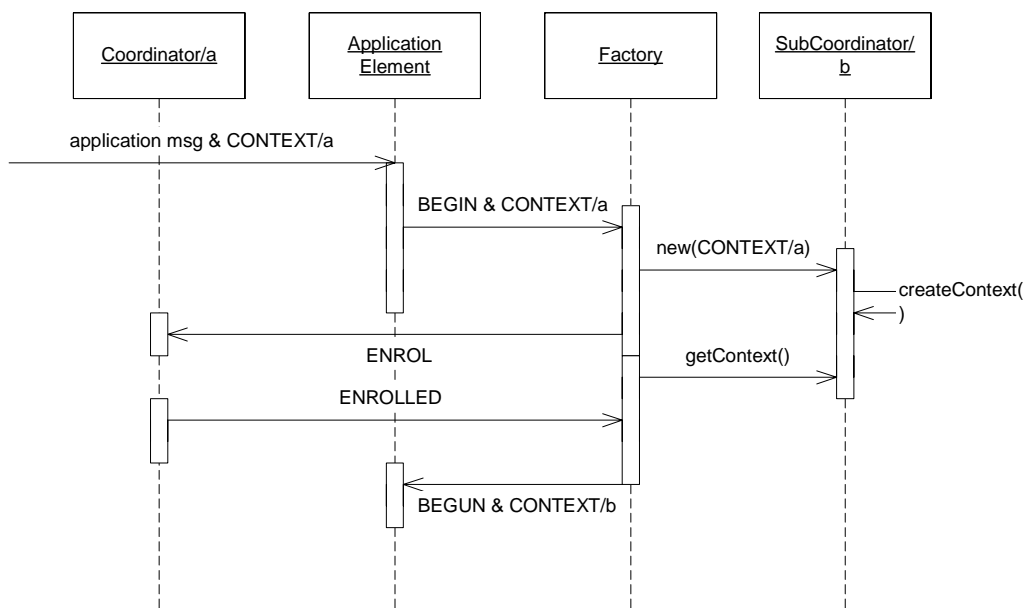
**Figure 7 Sequence diagram of propagation**

---

<sup>2</sup> The relationship between the application activity and BTP is subtle, and summarised in this sentence.

749 **Creation of Intermediates (Sub-Coordinators and Sub-Composers)**

750 If the new Inferior is to be a Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer, this can be created using a non-  
 751 standard mechanism or the Initiator:Factory relationship can be used again. Figure 8 shows a  
 752 sequence diagram, using the latter mechanism. The application element, having received an  
 753 application message and a CONTEXT from some Superior – shown as a Coordinator/a in the  
 754 diagram - wants to create the new Inferior and acting in the Initiator role, issues BEGIN to the  
 755 Factory, but the CONTEXT for the original Superior (Coordinator/a) is “related” to the BEGIN.  
 756 The Factory is responsible for enrolling the new Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer as an Inferior  
 757 of the Superior identified by the received CONTEXT. The reply from the Factory is a related  
 758 BEGUN and CONTEXT – this being the CONTEXT for the new Sub-coordinator (‘b’) or Sub-  
 759 composer as a Superior. The Sub-coordinator/Sub-composer is not a Decider, as its decision is  
 760 subordinated to the outcome received from the Superior. For a Sub-coordinator, further control by  
 761 the application is primarily a matter of relating the new CONTEXT to appropriate application  
 762 activity. For a Sub-composer, there is **in-additionalalso** a requirement for the application to  
 763 determine which of the Inferiors of the Sub-composer must have reported they are prepared  
 764 before the Sub-composer can report that it is itself prepared to its own Superior, and then which  
 765 of these Inferiors are to be ordered to confirm if the Sub-composer is ordered to confirm. This  
 766 specification does not provide an interface or interoperable message to control this; like the  
 767 relationship between application element and Participant, it is left to the implementation or  
 768 independent standardisation.



769

770

**Figure 8 – Creation of a Sub-coordinator**

771 The creation of a new Inferior and establishment of a Superior:Inferior relationship does not  
 772 always imply that the BTP Actors are under the control of different business parties or application  
 773 elements. In particular, an application element may begin a Cohesion, then create and enrol  
 774 (atomic) Sub-coordinators as Inferiors of the Composer, then associate a different Sub-  
 775 coordinator’s CONTEXT with each of several aspects of the application work, transmitting that  
 776 CONTEXT with the application messages for that aspect to the other parties in the business  
 777 transaction. Those parties can then create Participants (or other Inferiors) that are enrolled with

778 the appropriate Sub-coordinator. Later, the application element (as Terminator, or its equivalent)  
779 can choose which of the Cohesion Composers' Inferiors to cancel and which to confirm. By  
780 interposing its own atomic Sub-coordinator the initiating application element can indicate to the  
781 other parties that some associated set of application work will be confirmed or cancelled as a unit.  
782 This may allow the receiving parties to share information between application operations and to  
783 make one Participant responsible for applying the outcome to several operations.

#### 784 **"Checking" and context-reply**

785 In BTP, enrolment is at the initiative of an application element that has received or has access to  
786 the CONTEXT which creates an Inferior (BTP uses a "pull" paradigm for enrolment). An  
787 application element in possession of a CONTEXT can choose, perhaps constrained by an  
788 overarching business and application understanding, whether and how many Inferiors to create  
789 and enrol. Consequently, in general, an application element which propagates a CONTEXT to  
790 another (via whatever mechanisms it choose), cannot be sure how many Inferiors will be enrolled  
791 as a result. Without further controls, there would be a possibility that an application element  
792 receiving a CONTEXT might attempt to enrol an Inferior with a Superior after the Superior had  
793 been asked to confirm, or even had completed confirmation. In such a case application work that  
794 should have been part of a confirmed atomic business transaction could be cancelled, violating  
795 the atomicity in a manner that will not be apparent to the application.

796 To avoid this, whenever a CONTEXT is transmitted to another party by or on behalf of the  
797 application, the transmission of the CONTEXT itself can be replied to with a  
798 CONTEXT\_REPLY message – this is required for an Atom, allowed for a Cohesion. An  
799 application element that has received a BTP CONTEXT is able, because it knows the Superior's  
800 identification and address in the CONTEXT, to enrol Inferiors (Figure 9).<sup>3</sup> Replying with  
801 CONTEXT\_REPLY means that the sender (the earlier receiver of a CONTEXT) will not enrol  
802 any more Inferiors. Consequently the sender of a CONTEXT can keep track of whether there are  
803 any outstanding (un-replied to) CONTEXTs that could be used for an enrolment and can avoid  
804 requesting or permitting confirmation until everything is safe. This check is required for an Atom,  
805 but is not always essential when the CONTEXT is for a Cohesion. For a Cohesion, it is a matter  
806 for the controlling application whether all would-be Inferiors must be enrolled before a  
807 confirmation decision can be made; or whether it is acceptable to proceed to confirmation at some  
808 point in time with the already enrolled Inferiors (or a subset thereof), accepting the automatic  
809 cancellation of any late arrivals.

810 CONTEXT\_REPLY can also indicate that attempted enrollments failed. This can occur if the  
811 Enroller is unable to contact the Superior, but it able to return a CONTEXT\_REPLY to where-  
812 ever the CONTEXT came from.

#### 813 **Message sequence**

814 BTP messages are used in relationships between several pairs of roles. These particular pair-wise  
815 relationships can be categorised into:

---

<sup>3</sup> The "application element" from the perspective of BTP may include infrastructure software such as containers or interceptors, as well the application-specific code itself.

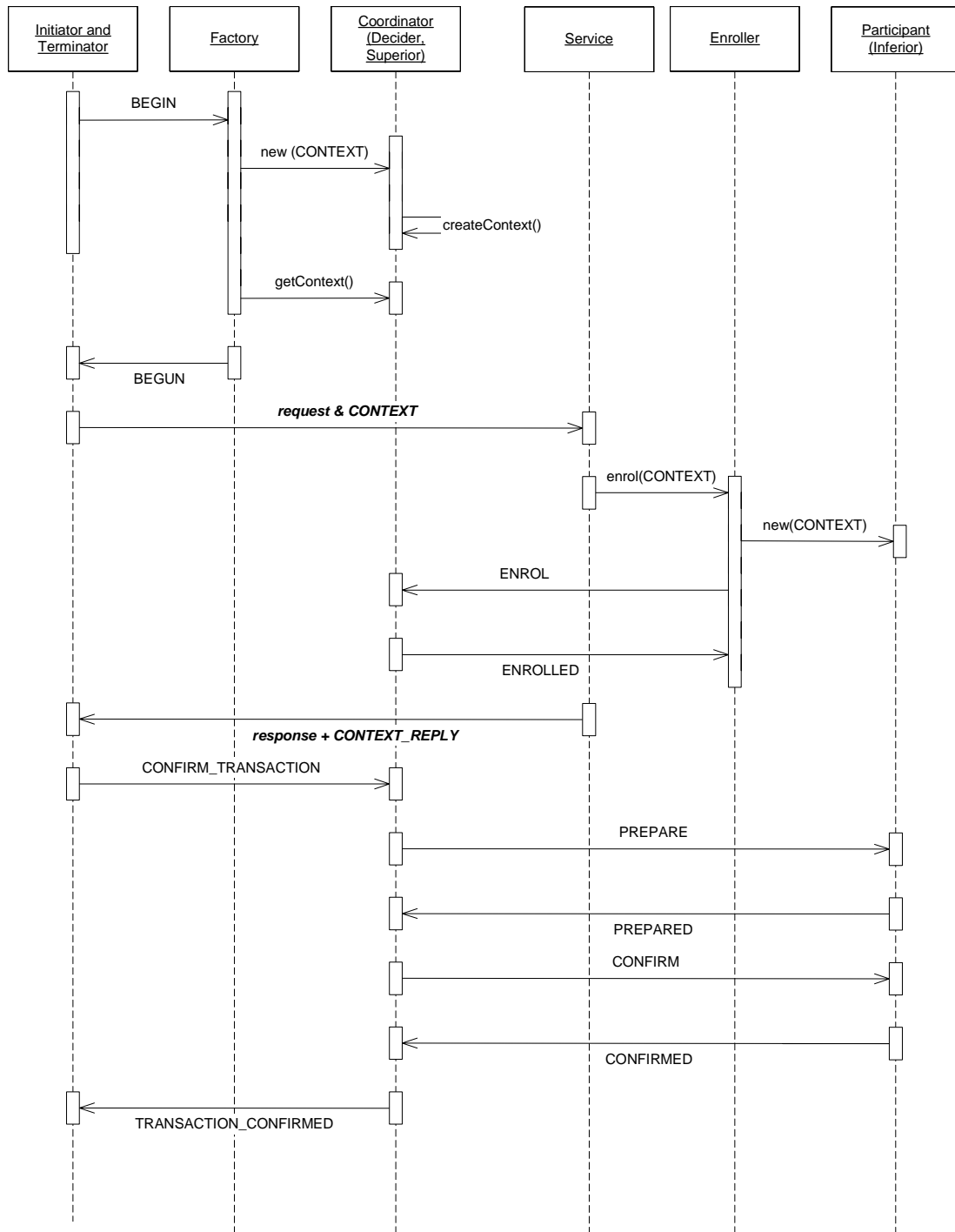
816           • Outcome relationships : the Superior:Inferior relationship (i.e. between BTP actors  
817           within the transaction tree) and the Enroller:Superior relationship used in establishing it

818           • Control relationships : the application:BTP actor relationships that create the nodes of  
819           the transaction tree (Initiator:Factory) and drive the completion (Terminator:Decider).

820   The outcome relationships and the messages used in them an essential part of BTP. For the  
821   control relationships, it would be possible to achieve the same general function using non-  
822   standardised messages or API mechanisms. There are other distinguishable relationships between  
823   roles defined by BTP that are not standardised in this specification.

824   Figure 9 shows the message exchange for the conventional progression of a simple transaction to  
825   confirmation with a single Superior:Inferior relationship, assuming the standard control  
826   relationship. Two application elements using a request/response application message exchange  
827   are involved – the first is represented as the Initiator and Terminator, the second as the Service  
828   and Enroller. The Decider/Superior is shown as a Coordinator, but with only one Inferior there  
829   would be no difference with a cohesion Composer. The Factory:Coordinator events are non-  
830   standardised, but represent interactions that must occur in some form. There are other interactions  
831   between the various application groups – Initiator-Terminator and Participant-Enroller-Service  
832   that are not shown – in particular the Service:Participant relationship.

833   The message sequence is shown is the “conventional” sequence, with all messages explicitly  
834   present and sent separately. There are several variations and optimisations possible – these are  
835   discussed below.



836

837

**Figure 9 A conventional message sequence for a simple transaction**

838 Note that CONTEXT has a “related” (&) relationship to BEGUN and to the application request

839 (although in the latter case the meaning of this is defined by the application, not by BTP. The

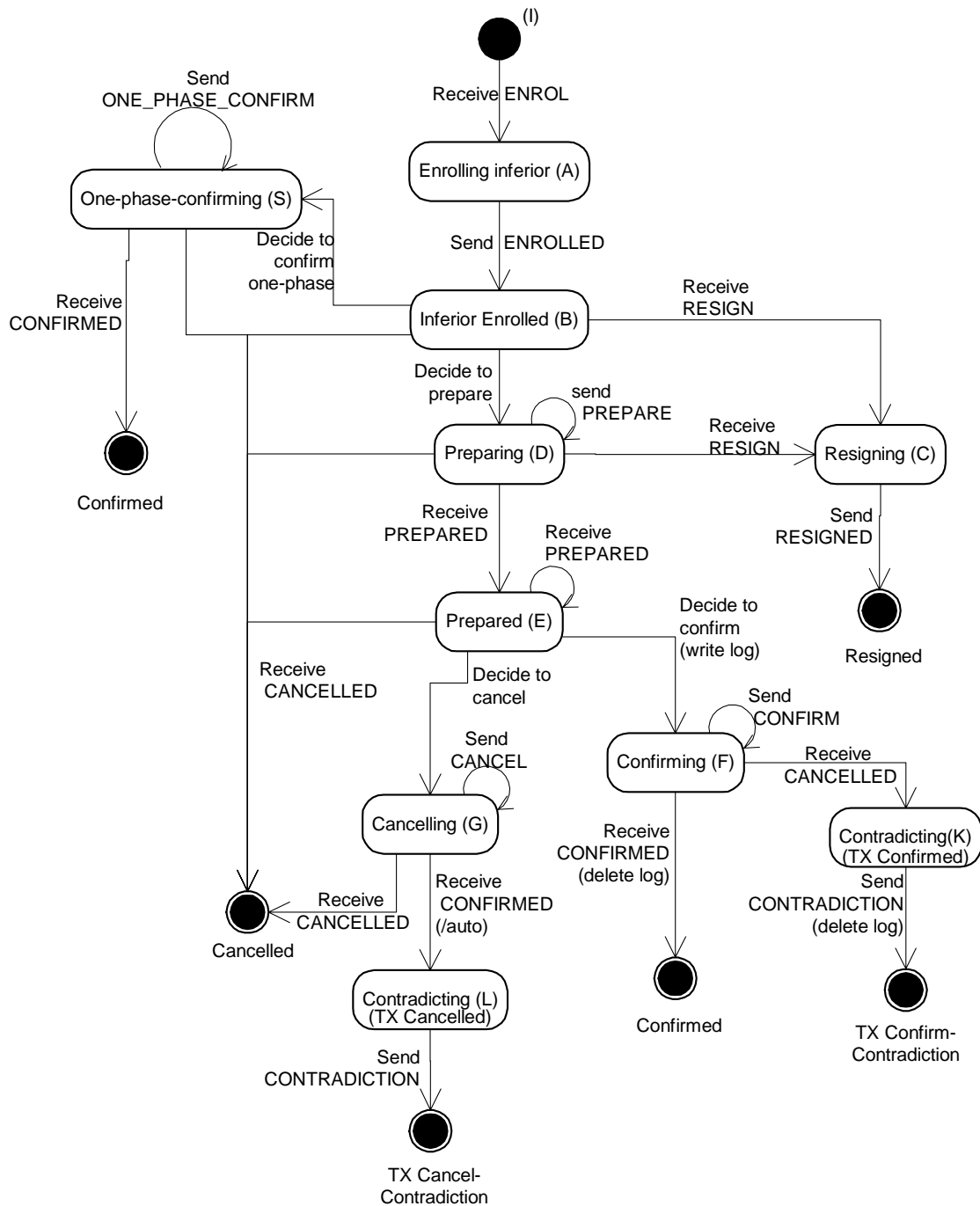
840 response + CONTEXT\_REPLY has no semantic significance, and could be sent separately;

841 provided the CONTEXT\_REPLY is not sent until the ENROLLED has returned.

842 The progression of a single instance of the central outcome (Superior:Inferior) relationship can  
843 also be presented as a set of state transitions. The normative part of the specification includes  
844 state tables for the Superior side of such a relationship and for the Inferior. Since a single  
845 Superior (Coordinator, Composer, Sub-coordinator, Sub-composer) can have multiple Inferiors,  
846 each Superior will have multiple instances of the “Superior state”. How these link together is  
847 discussed below in the section “Evolution of confirm-set”, but the state transitions for the  
848 individual Superior:Inferior relationships include “decision events” which constrain the behaviour  
849 of the business transaction tree node as a whole, and thus define the semantics of the BTP  
850 messages.

851 The normative state tables distinguish some states that differ only in which messages can be  
852 received and thus allow for a level of error checking. The progress of the outcome relationship  
853 can be followed without dropping to such a detailed level, and the state diagrams shown here  
854 aggregate some of the states that are distinguished in the state tables. The single letters in  
855 parentheses in the diagrams correspond to the state names used in the tables. For simplicity, the  
856 state diagrams do not include the events leading to the sending of a HAZARD message – the  
857 detection and recording of a “problem” – meaning that the Inferior is unable to cleanly confirm or  
858 cleanly cancel the operations it is responsible for. As is specified in the state tables, such a  
859 problem can be detected in most states, and reported with a HAZARD message.

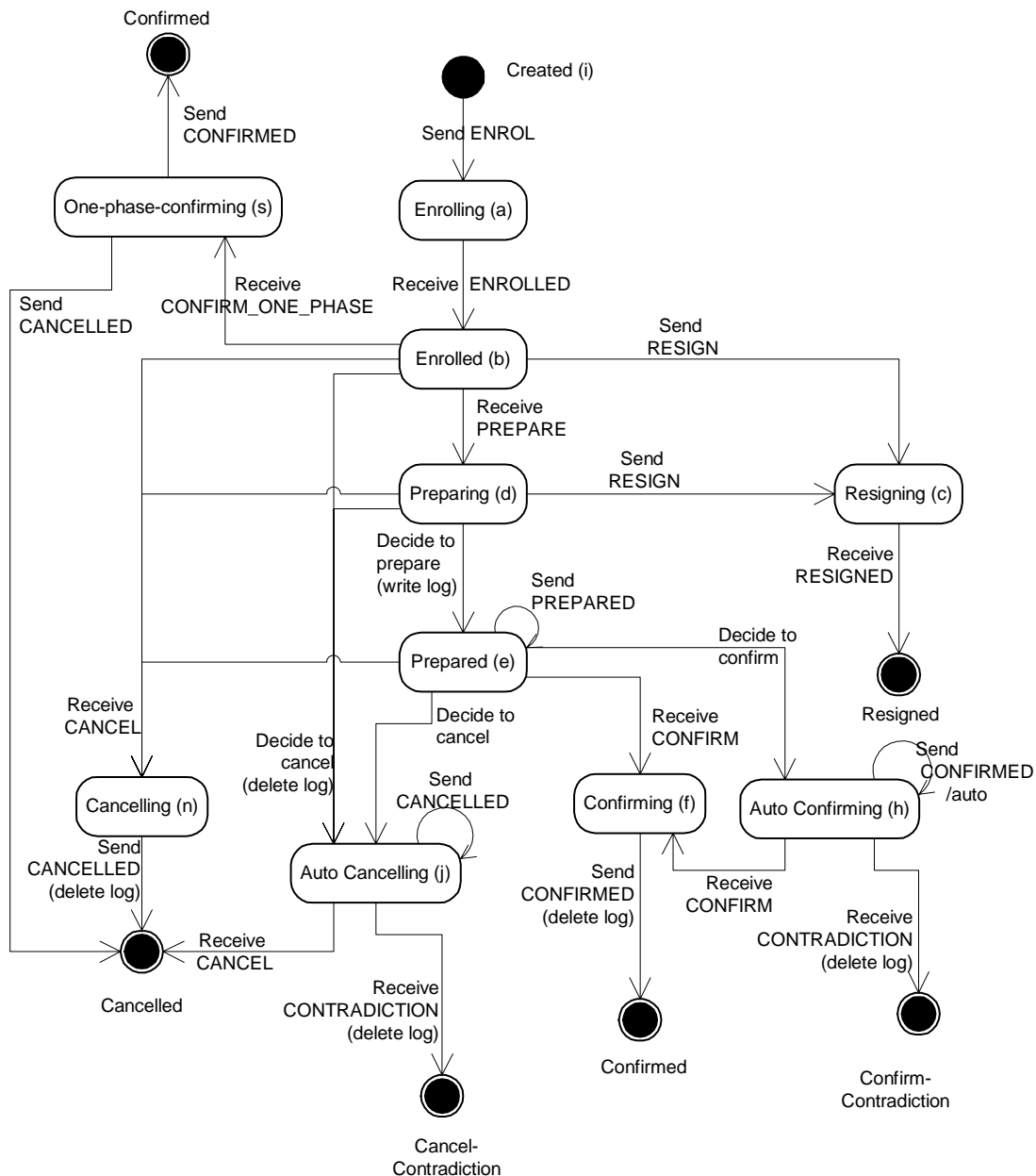
860 It should be noted that, with some exceptions, the transmission of a message **from** a Superior or  
861 Inferior does not cause a state change at that side. State changes are normally caused either by the  
862 receipt of a message from the peer, or by a “decision event” – which may be an internal change,  
863 including a change in the persistent information for the transactions, or may be the receipt of a  
864 message on another relationship (e.g. as when a Sub-coordinator receives CANCEL from its  
865 Superior, which is a decision event as perceived on the relationships to its Inferiors). It would be  
866 normal for an implementation on entering a new state to send the message it can now send (there  
867 will be only one). It may repeat this message at any interval – in practice only if there is reason to  
868 believe (due to lower-layer errors, timeout or known recovery events) that messages may have got  
869 lost.



870

871

**Figure 10 State diagram for Superior side of a Superior:Inferior relationship**



872

873

**Figure 11 State diagram for Inferior side of Superior:Inferior relationship**

874

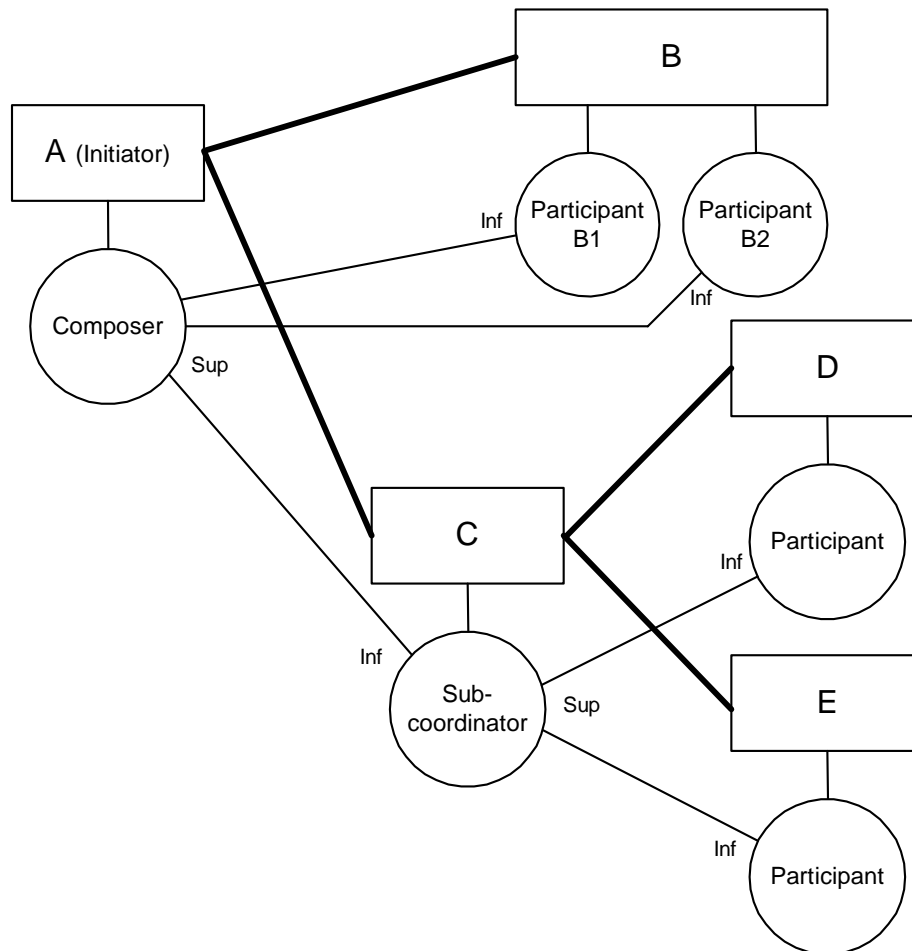
### Control of inferiors

875

In the case as shown in Figure 12, where the CONTEXT has been propagated from one application element (A) to others (B, C, and from C to D,E), the determination of whether to create and enrol Inferiors is, in general, up to the receiving application element – this is an aspect of the fundamental autonomy of the parties involved in a business transaction. This autonomy may be constrained in particular situations, by inter-party agreement or where the application elements are in fact under common control.

880





881

882 **Figure 12 Transaction tree showing various application:Participant relationships**

883 The relationship between the application messages and either the propagated CONTEXT or the  
 884 ENROL message(s) sent to the Superior is strictly part of the application protocol (or the  
 885 application-with-BTP combination protocol). However defined, this allows the Superior-side  
 886 application element to be aware of what application work will be confirmed or cancelled under  
 887 the control of an Inferior. However, from the perspective of the Superior, and the application  
 888 element controlling it, the Inferior is opaque – it is not in general possible for the Superior or its  
 889 controlling application element to determine whether an Inferior is a Sub-composer or Sub-  
 890 coordinator (i.e. has Inferiors of its own) or is a Participant, with no further BTP relationships.  
 891 Thus, if the Inferior is a Sub-composer or Sub-coordinator, the Superior has no visibility or  
 892 control of its “grand-children” – the Inferiors of its Inferior (thus, in Figure 12, the Composer at A  
 893 is unaware of D and E)

894 The opacity of an Inferior does not however apply to the control exercised by the immediately  
 895 controlling application element. An application element, acting as Terminator to a Decider (i.e. to  
 896 a Composer or Coordinator), can be aware of and distinguish the different Inferiors enrolled with  
 897 that Decider (i.e. Inferiors enrolled with the Decider in its role as Superior). (E.g.in Figure 12,  
 898 application element A knows of the Inferiors at C, B1 and B2) This is especially the case for a  
 899 Cohesion Composer, where the Terminator will be able to control which of the enrolled Inferiors  
 900 of the Composer are eventually confirmed – more exactly, the application will have control of the

901 confirm-set for the Cohesion. For an Atom Coordinator, visibility of the Inferiors is useful but  
902 less important, since no selection can be made among which will be in the confirm-set – for an  
903 Atom, all Inferiors are ipso facto members of the confirm-set.

904 For this control of the Inferiors to be useful, the Terminator application element will need to be  
905 able to associate particular parts of the application work with each Inferior. In a traditional  
906 transaction system, users do not need to see participants, but they see services or objects. What  
907 participants are enlisted with a transaction on behalf of those services and objects is not really of  
908 interest to the user. When it comes to commit or rollback the transaction, it acts on the transaction  
909 and not on the individual participants.

910 In BTP that is still the case if we work purely with atoms. While an Atomic Coordinator knows  
911 its participants it cannot pick and choose among them. In contrast, a Cohesive Terminator must  
912 have significant, detailed knowledge and visibility of both the identities of its inferiors and  
913 association of parts of the application work with each Inferior. The user must be able to identify  
914 which participants to cancel/prepare/confirm. This identification can be achieved by various  
915 means. Taking the case of an application element controlling a Cohesion Composer:

- 916 a) The application element can create an Atom Sub-coordinator as an immediate  
917 Inferior of the Cohesion Composer and propagate the Sub-coordinator’s CONTEXT  
918 associated with application messages concerned with the particular part of the  
919 application work; any Inferiors (however many there may be) enrolled with Sub-  
920 coordinator can be assumed to be responsible for (some of) that part of the  
921 application, and the Terminator application element can just deal with the immediate  
922 Inferior of the Composer that it created.
- 923 b) The application element can propagate the Composer’s own CONTEXT, and the  
924 receiving application element can create its own Inferior (or Inferiors) which will be  
925 responsible for some part of the application, and send ENROL(s) to the Composer (as  
926 Superior). Application messages concerned with that part of the application are  
927 associated, directly or indirectly, with each ENROL, and the Terminator application  
928 element can thus determine what each Inferior is responsible for.

929 In both cases, the means by which the application message and the BTP CONTEXT or ENROL  
930 are associated are ultimately application-specific, and there are several ways this can be done.

- 931 • At the abstract message level, BTP defines the concept of transmitting “related” BTP and  
932 application messages – particular bindings to carrier protocols can specify interoperable  
933 ways to represent this relatedness (e.g. the BTP message can be in a “header” field of the  
934 carrier protocol, the application message in the body).
- 935 • An application message may contain fields that identify or point to the BTP message (e.g.  
936 the “inferior-identifier” from the ENROL may be a field of the application message).
- 937 • BTP messages, including CONTEXT and ENROL, can carry “qualifiers” – extension  
938 fields that are not core parts of BTP or are not defined by BTP at all. The standard  
939 qualifier “inferior-name” or application-specific qualifiers can be used to associate  
940 application information and the BTP message. The qualifiers received from the Inferiors  
941 on ENROL are visible to the Terminator application on the INFERIOR\_STATUSES

942 message. The application design will need to ensure that the Terminator can determine  
943 which parts of the application work are associated with each Inferior.

944 *NOTE -- For example, a service receiving an invocation associated with a cohesion*  
945 *CONTEXT, but where the application design meant that there would be no more*  
946 *than one Inferior enrolled as a result of that invocation, could be required to include*  
947 *information identifying the service and the invocation in the “inferior-name”*  
948 *qualifier on the consequent ENROL. These qualifiers would be visible to the*  
949 *Terminator on INFERIOR\_STATUSES, allowing the Terminator to determine which*  
950 *“inferior-identifiers” to include in the “inferiors-list” parameter of the*  
951 *CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION which defines which Inferiors are to be confirmed.*  
952 *Among other alternatives, the “inferior-identifier” itself could be a field of the*  
953 *application response – this would also be applicable where there could be multiple*  
954 *Inferiors enrolled as a consequence of one invocation for the Terminator to choose*  
955 *between.*

956 These considerations about control of the Inferiors of a Decider also apply to the control of the  
957 Inferiors of a Sub-composer (and, again of less importance, a Sub-coordinator).

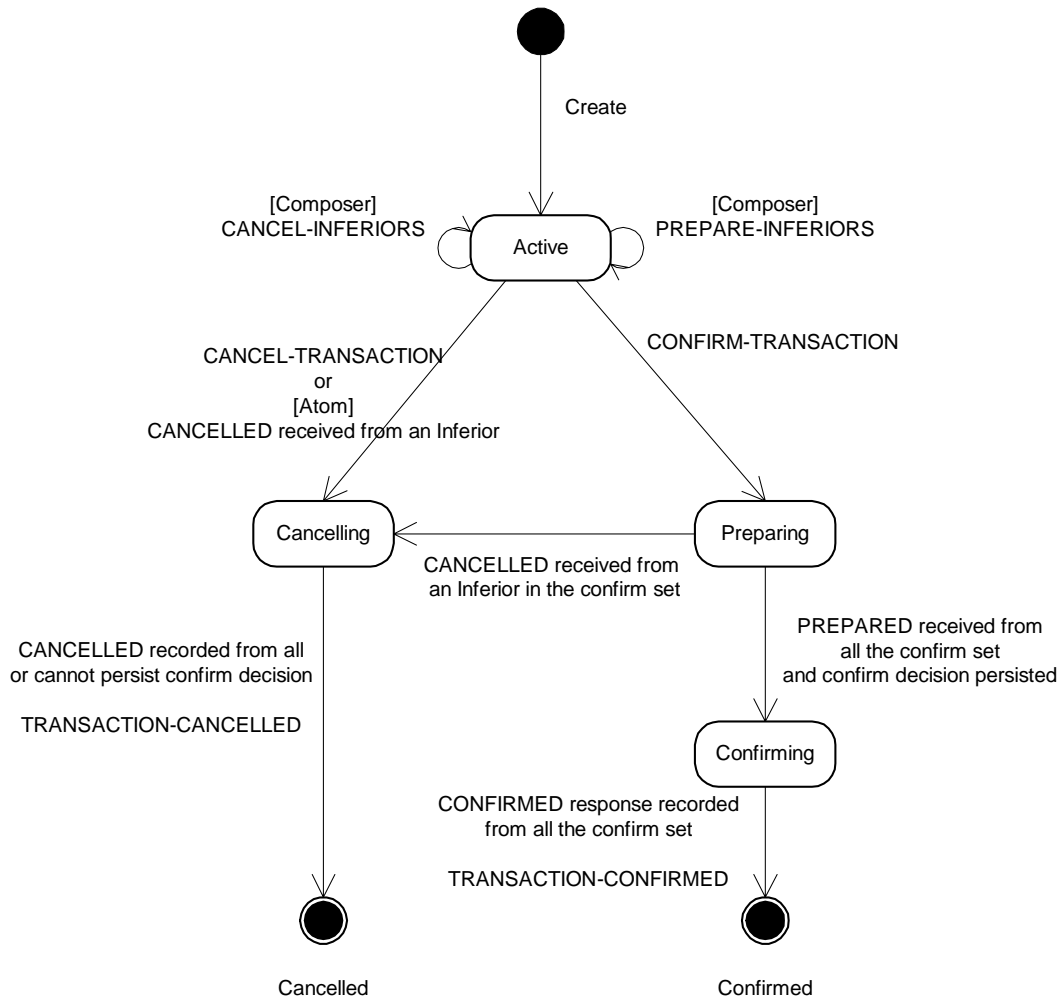
## 958 **Evolution of confirm-set**

959 As mentioned above, the set of Inferiors of a Cohesion that will eventually confirm is called the  
960 Confirm-set. The determination of the Confirm-set is made by the controlling application, but is  
961 affected by events from the Inferiors themselves. If the standard control relationship is used, the  
962 control of the Cohesion Composer is expressed by the Terminator:Decider exchanges, and the  
963 progressive determination of the confirm-set (its evolution) is effectively the event sequence for  
964 the Terminator:Decider relationship.

965 An Atom also has a confirm-set, but this always includes all the Inferiors and so does not evolve  
966 in the same way as Cohesion’s. With some exceptions, the Terminator:Decider relationship is the  
967 same for Atom Coordinators as for Cohesion Composers; this section deals with both, noting the  
968 exceptions.

969 The event sequence for a Composer or Coordinator is summarised in the state diagram in Figure  
970 13. The step-by-step description refers to “Composer”, but should be read as referring to  
971 Coordinators as well, unless stated otherwise.

972 Initially, the Composer is created (by the Factory, using BEGIN with no related CONTEXT), and  
973 has no Inferiors. The Composer is now in the active state.



974

975

**Figure 13 State diagram for a Composer or Coordinator (i.e. Decider)**

976

While in the active state, the following may occur, in any order and with any repetition or overlapping:

977

978

- Inferiors are enrolled – ENROL is received by the Composer – adding to the set of Inferiors of the Composer.

979

980

- Inferiors may resign - RESIGN is received from an Inferior (see section Resignation below). The Inferior is immediately removed from the set of Inferiors, as if it had never been enrolled (a RESIGNED message may be sent to the Inferior, but it no longer “counts” in any of the Composer-wide considerations here).

981

982

983

984

- CANCELLED may be received from an Inferior; there is no required immediate effect, but if this is a Coordinator the Atom will certainly cancel eventually (and an implementation may choose to initiate cancellation immediately).

985

986

987

- PREPARED may be received; there is no immediate effect

988                   • The Terminator may issue PREPARE\_INFERIORS to the Composer (as Decider)  
989                   for some subset of the Inferiors; PREPARE is sent to each and any of the Inferiors  
990                   in the subset, excluding any from RESIGN, CANCELLED or PREPARED has been  
991                   received; the sending of PREPARE will induce the Inferiors to reply with  
992                   PREPARED, CANCELLED or RESIGN; when replies have been received from all,  
993                   the Composer (as Decider) replies to the Terminator with INFERIOR\_STATUSES,  
994                   reporting the replies received (which may in fact have been received before the  
995                   PREPARE\_INFERIORS). PREPARE\_INFERIORS is not issued to Atom  
996                   Coordinators.

997                   • The Terminator may issue CANCEL\_INFERIORS to the Composer (as Decider) for  
998                   some subset of the Inferiors; CANCEL is sent to each and any of the Inferiors in the  
999                   subset, excluding any from RESIGN or CANCELLED has been received; the  
1000                   sending of CANCEL will normally induce the Inferiors to reply with CANCELLED  
1001                   – there are some exception cases; when replies have been received from all, the  
1002                   Composer (as Decider) replies to the Terminator with INFERIOR\_STATUSES,  
1003                   reporting the replies received. CANCEL\_INFERIORS is not issued to Atom  
1004                   Coordinators. CANCEL\_INFERIORS may be issued for an Inferior regardless of  
1005                   whether PREPARED has been received from it.

1006                   • The Terminator may issue REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES to the Composer  
1007                   (as Decider) for all or some subset of the Inferiors; the Composer immediately  
1008                   replies with INFERIOR\_STATUSES, reporting the current state of the Inferiors as  
1009                   known to the Superior.

1010                   Eventually, the Terminator issues one of the completion messages – CANCEL\_TRANSACTION  
1011                   or CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION. These messages have a flag that determines whether the  
1012                   Terminator wishes to be informed of contradictory and heuristic decisions or hazards within the  
1013                   transaction – this affects when the reply from the Composer (as Decider) is sent to the  
1014                   Terminator. (See section “Autonomous cancel, autonomous confirm and contradictions” for  
1015                   details on contradictory and heuristic cases).

1016                   If the message is CANCEL\_TRANSACTION, CANCEL is sent to all Inferiors that it has not  
1017                   already been sent to, and from which neither RESIGN or CANCELLED have been received. If  
1018                   the Terminator indicates it does not want to be informed of contradictions, the Composer will  
1019                   immediately reply with TRANSACTION\_CANCELLED. Otherwise, if and when CANCELLED  
1020                   or RESIGN has been received from all Inferiors, the Composer replies to the Terminator with  
1021                   TRANSACTION\_CANCELLED; but if HAZARD or CONFIRMED is received from any  
1022                   Inferior, the reply is INFERIOR\_STATUSES, identifying which Inferior(s) had problems.

1023                   If the completion message is CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION, the inferiors-list parameter of the  
1024                   message defines the confirm-set. If the parameter is absent (which it must be for an atom  
1025                   Coordinator), then all Inferiors (excluding only those that have resigned) are the confirm-set;  
1026                   otherwise the confirm-set is only the Inferiors identified in the inferiors-list parameter (less any  
1027                   from which RESIGN has been received). The processing to arrive at the confirm decision is:

1028                   • If at the point of receiving CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION or at any point before making  
1029                   the confirm decision (see below), CANCELLED is received, then the transaction is  
1030                   cancelled and processing continues as if CANCEL\_TRANSACTION had been received.

- 1031 • If there any Inferiors **not** in the confirm-set from which neither CANCELLED or  
1032 RESIGN has been received, CANCEL is sent to them (this cannot happen for Atom  
1033 Coordinators)
- 1034 • If initially or later, there is exactly one Inferior in the confirm-set, and either PREPARE  
1035 has not been sent to it, or PREPARED has been received from it, then at implementation  
1036 or configuration option, CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE can be sent to that Inferior. This  
1037 delegates the confirm decision to the Inferior
- 1038 • If at any point, RESIGN is received from an Inferior, it is immediately removed from  
1039 the confirm-set (this may trigger the decision making)
- 1040 • If there are any Inferiors in the confirm-set from which none of PREPARED,  
1041 CANCELLED has been received and to which PREPARE has not yet been sent,  
1042 PREPARE is sent to that Inferior
- 1043 • If initially or later, PREPARED has been received from all Inferiors in the confirm-set,  
1044 the Composer *makes the confirm decision*; it persists (or attempts to persist) information  
1045 identifying the Inferiors in the confirm-set; if this fails, the transaction is cancelled and  
1046 processing continues as if CANCEL\_TRANSACTION had been received; if the  
1047 information is persisted, the confirm decision has been made.

1048 When the confirm decision is made, CONFIRM is sent to all the Inferiors in the confirm-set. And,  
1049 if on the CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION the Terminator indicated it did not wish to be informed of  
1050 contradictions, TRANSACTION\_CONFIRMED is sent to the Terminator.

1051 If the Terminator indicated it wanted to be informed of contradictions, the Composer replies to it  
1052 with TRANSACTION\_CONFIRMED if and when CONFIRMED has been received from all the  
1053 Inferiors in the confirm-set and CANCELLED or RESIGN has been received from any other  
1054 Inferiors. If other replies (CANCELLED from a confirm-set Inferior, CONFIRMED from other  
1055 Inferiors, HAZARD from any) are received, the reply to the Terminator is  
1056 INFERIOR\_STATUSES, identifying which Inferior(s) had problems.

1057 Figure 14 shows an example message sequence for a Composer with three Inferiors. The  
1058 Terminator (application element) chooses to prepare Inferiors 1 and 3 explicitly – the numbers in  
1059 parentheses on the Terminator:Composer messages represent the inferior-identifiers in the  
1060 “inferior-list” parameters. Both 1 and 3 prepare successfully, but the Terminator then decides to  
1061 make 1 and 2 the confirm-set; that is, if the transaction confirms only 1 and 2 are confirmed. The  
1062 Terminator issues CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION to the Composer. A PREPARED message has  
1063 not been received from Inferior 2 yet, so the Composer issues PREPARE to it, and waits for the  
1064 PREPARED. At the same time, it sends CANCEL to Inferior 3, which has been excluded from  
1065 the confirm-set by the CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION. After the PREPARED is received from  
1066 Inferior 2, the Composer makes the confirm decision and issues CONFIRM to the Inferiors, and  
1067 waits for the CONFIRMED messages before reporting to the Terminator. The  
1068 CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION in this case did not ask for reporting of hazards (see below) – if it  
1069 had not, the TRANSACTION\_CONFIRMED would have been sent at the same time as the  
1070 CONFIRM messages.

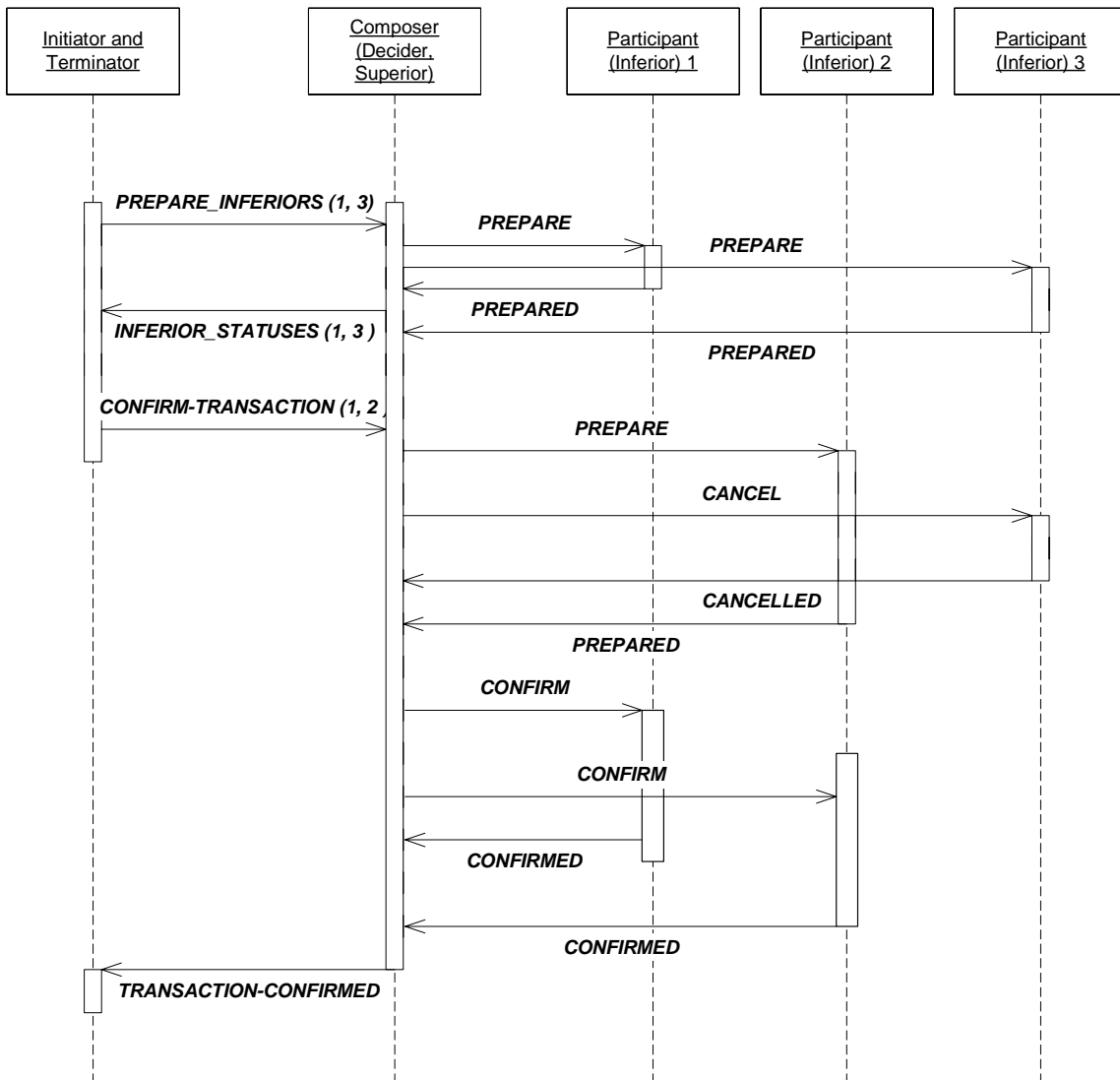


Figure 14 Termination sequence for a composer

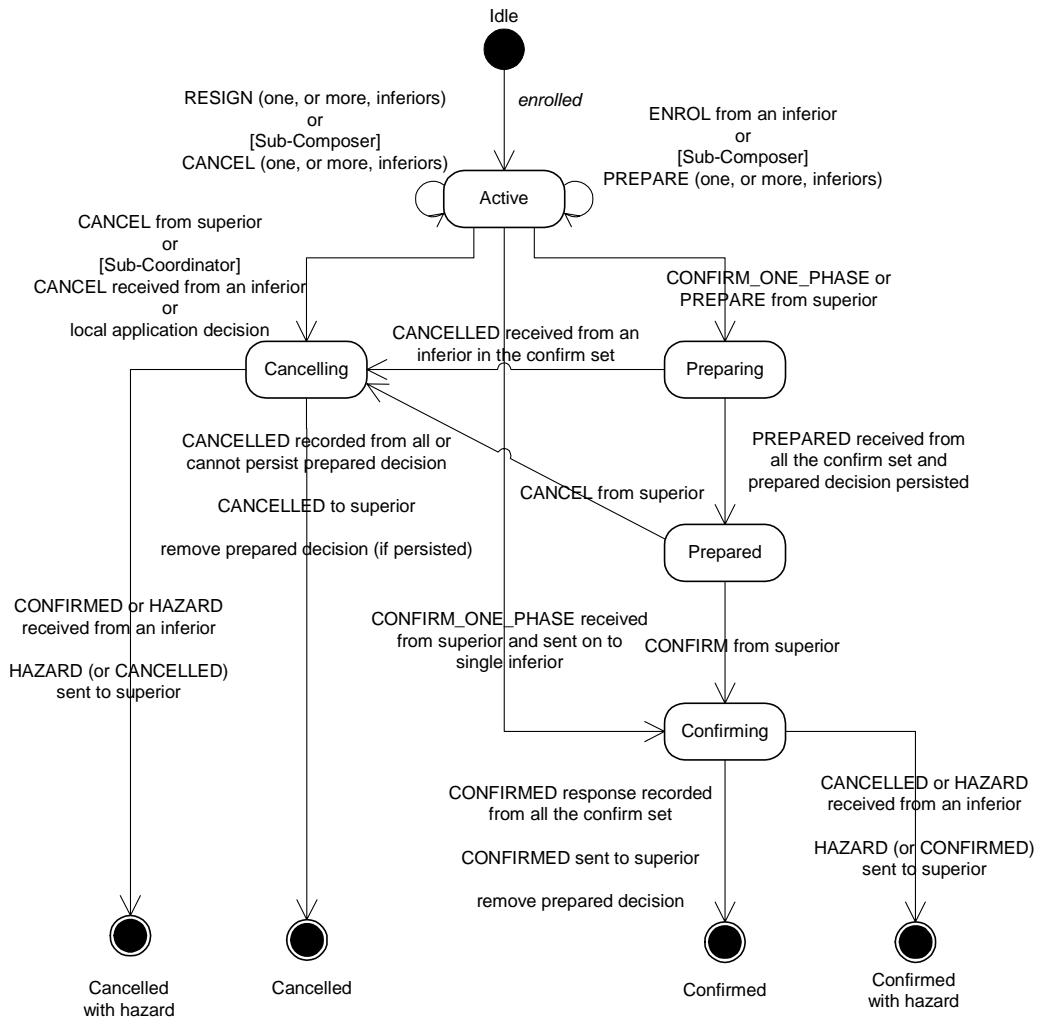
1071

1072 Confirm-set of intermediates

1073 An Intermediate, that is a Superior that is also an Inferior, also has a confirm-set, but this is  
 1074 controlled rather differently to the top-most Superior (Decider) described above.

1075 As an Inferior, the interface between the application and BTP elements is not fully defined in this  
 1076 specification. However, within the standard control relationship, issuing BEGIN with a related  
 1077 CONTEXT to a Factory will cause the creation of a Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer (depending  
 1078 on whether the BEGIN parameter asked for atomic or cohesive behaviour). Initially, of course,  
 1079 the new Intermediate has no Inferiors – however, unlike a Participant (in the strict sense of the  
 1080 term), it has a “superior-address” to which ENROL can be sent to enrol Inferiors. This address is  
 1081 a field of the new CONTEXT.

1082 Figure 15 is a state diagram for a Sub-composer or Sub-coordinator.



1083

1084

**Figure 15 State diagram for Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer**

1085

The behaviour of the Intermediate towards its Inferiors, during the active phase, is basically the same as for the Decider:

1086

1087

- ENROL messages can be received, adding a new Inferior

1088

- Inferiors may resign - RESIGN is received from an Inferior. The Inferior is immediately removed from the set of Inferiors

1089

1090

- CANCELLED may be received from an Inferior

1091

- PREPARED may be received from an Inferior

1092

In some circumstances, receipt of an incoming message allows an Intermediate to determine that a state change for the whole transaction node takes place. The Intermediate is able to send messages to its Superior at its own initiative (whereas a Decider can only respond to a received message from the Terminator), so the receipt of a message from an Inferior can trigger the

1093

1094

1095



1096 sending of messages. This is especially the case if the Intermediate knows (from application  
1097 knowledge, perhaps involving received or sent CONTEXT\_REPLY messages) that there will be  
1098 no further enrolments. In particular:

1099       • If CANCELLED is received from an Inferior, and this is a Sub-coordinator, the Sub-  
1100 coordinator can itself cancel - CANCEL is sent to other Inferiors, and CANCELLED to  
1101 the Superior

1102       • If RESIGN is received from the only Inferior and there will be no other enrolments, the  
1103 Intermediate can itself resign, sending RESIGN to the Superior

1104       • If PREPARED is received from the [Inferior](#)~~Superior~~, it is known there will be no other  
1105 enrolments and this is a Sub-coordinator, the Sub-coordinator can become prepared  
1106 (assuming successful persistence of the appropriate information) and send PREPARED  
1107 to the Superior.

1108 For a Sub-composer, application logic will invariably be involved in determining what effect a  
1109 CANCELLED and PREPARED from an Inferior have – though in a real implementation, this  
1110 logic may be delegated to the BTP-support software.

1111 The Intermediate may initiate cancellation or the two-phase outcome exchange, either as a result  
1112 of receiving the corresponding message (CANCEL, PREPARE) from the Superior, or triggered  
1113 by its own controlling application element. For a Sub-composer, this may be partial - a Sub-  
1114 composer might be instructed by the application element to cancel some Inferiors and send  
1115 PREPARE to others. Receipt of PREPARE from the Superior will often have a similar effect to a  
1116 Decider receiving CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION – PREPARE is propagated to all Inferiors that  
1117 have not indicated they are PREPARED. However, exactly what happens on receiving PREPARE  
1118 will depend on the application – receipt of the PREPARE may be visible to the application  
1119 element and cause it to initiate further application activity (perhaps causing enrolment of new  
1120 Inferiors) before it is determined whether to propagate PREPARE, and with a Sub-composer,  
1121 some of the Inferiors may be instructed to cancel instead.

1122 Assuming the Intermediate does not cancel as a whole (in which case CANCEL would be sent to  
1123 all Inferiors), the Intermediate will at some point attempt to become prepared. If it is a Sub-  
1124 coordinator, this will require that PREPARED has been received from all Inferiors. For a Sub-  
1125 composer, application logic will determine from which Inferiors PREPARED is required, with  
1126 the others being cancelled. In either case, the Intermediate will persist the information about the  
1127 Inferiors that are to be in the confirm-set and about the Superior, if this persisting is successful,  
1128 send PREPARED to its own Superior.

1129 If CANCEL is subsequently received from the Superior, this is propagated to all the Inferiors and  
1130 the persistent information removed (or effectively removed as far as recovery is concerned). It is  
1131 not important which order this is done in, since the recovery sequence will ensure that a cancel  
1132 outcome is eventually delivered anyway.

1133 If CONFIRM is received from the Superior (which can only be after sending PREPARED to the  
1134 Superior), this is likewise propagated to the Inferiors. For a Sub-coordinator, CONFIRM is  
1135 invariably sent to all Inferiors. However, for a Sub-composer it is possible further application  
1136 logic intervenes and some of the Inferiors are rejected from the confirm-set at this late stage.

1137 (This can only occur when the application work, as defined by the contract to the Superior, can be  
1138 performed by some sub-set of the Inferiors.) The Intermediate may, but is not required to, change  
1139 the persistent information to reflect the confirm outcome (though a Sub-composer that selects  
1140 only some Inferiors probably will need to re-write the information to ensure the correct subset are  
1141 confirmed despite possible failures). If the information is not changed, then, on recovery, the  
1142 Intermediate will find itself to be in a prepared state and will interrogate the Superior to re-  
1143 determine the outcome. If the information is changed, a recovered Intermediate can immediately  
1144 continue with ordering confirmation to its Inferiors.

1145 If CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE is received from the Superior, either before or after the Intermediate  
1146 has become PREPARED, the effect is very similar to a Decider receiving  
1147 CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION. If there is only one Inferior, the CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE may  
1148 be propagated to that Inferior. Otherwise, the Intermediate behaves as a Decider, making a  
1149 confirm decision if it can.

1150 If one or more Inferiors make contradictory autonomous decisions, or HAZARD is received from  
1151 an Inferior, the Intermediate may report this to the Superior using HAZARD. However, BTP does  
1152 not require this. Since the Superior may be owned and controlled by a different organisation,  
1153 there may be business reasons not to report such problems.

## 1154 **Optimisations and variations**

### 1155 **Spontaneous prepared**

1156 As described above, before a Superior can order confirmation to an Inferior, the Inferior must  
1157 become “prepared”, meaning that it is ready to confirm or to cancel as it so ordered and send the  
1158 PREPARED message as a report of this. In the conventional message sequence, as shown above,  
1159 the Inferior attempts to become prepared when it receives a PREPARE message from the  
1160 Superior. The PREPARE in turn is sent by the Superior when it receives an appropriate request  
1161 from its controlling application (or from its own Superior, if there is one). The application  
1162 controlling the Superior will request the sending of PREPARE when it determines that no further  
1163 application work associated with this Inferior (or, perhaps with the whole business transaction)  
1164 will occur.

1165 However, for some applications, the application element controlling the Inferior will know that  
1166 the application work for which the Inferior will be responsible is complete before a PREPARE is  
1167 sent from the Superior. In fact, because the application element has autonomy in determining how  
1168 application work is to be allocated to Inferiors, it is possible for the Inferior-side application  
1169 element to know the work is complete **for a particular Inferior** when Superior-side application  
1170 element will be sending more message to the Inferior-side. (The future work will, probably,  
1171 require the enrollment of additional Inferiors.)

1172 BTP consequently allows the application element controlling an Inferior to cause the Inferior to  
1173 become prepared, and to send PREPARED to the Superior without PREPARE having been  
1174 received from the Superior. From the perspective of the BTP Superior the Inferior sends  
1175 PREPARED spontaneously. Apart from this, a spontaneous PREPARED message is the same as,  
1176 and has the same effect and implications as one induced by a PREPARE message.

1177 **One-shot**

1178 In the “conventional” message sequence shown above and assuming the Initiator, Terminator and  
1179 Coordinator on the one side, and “Service”, Enroller and Participant on the other are located  
1180 within their respective parties, there are eight messages passed in one direction or the other  
1181 between the two parties. There are four round-trip exchanges: the application request and  
1182 response exchange, the ENROL/ENROLLED exchange (going in the opposite direction and  
1183 overlapped with the application exchange), then PREPARE/PREPARED and the  
1184 CONFIRM/CONFIRMED. However, if the application exchange is a single request/response, it  
1185 is possible to reduce these eight to two round-trips– the first of which merges the first three of the  
1186 conventional sequence. The fundamental two-phase nature of BTP (or any coordination  
1187 mechanism) means there have to be at least two round trips – one before the confirm-or-cancel  
1188 decision is made at the Superior, one after. This merging of the exchanges is termed “one-shot”,  
1189 as it requires only one exchange to take the relationship from non-existent to waiting for the  
1190 confirm-or-cancel decision.

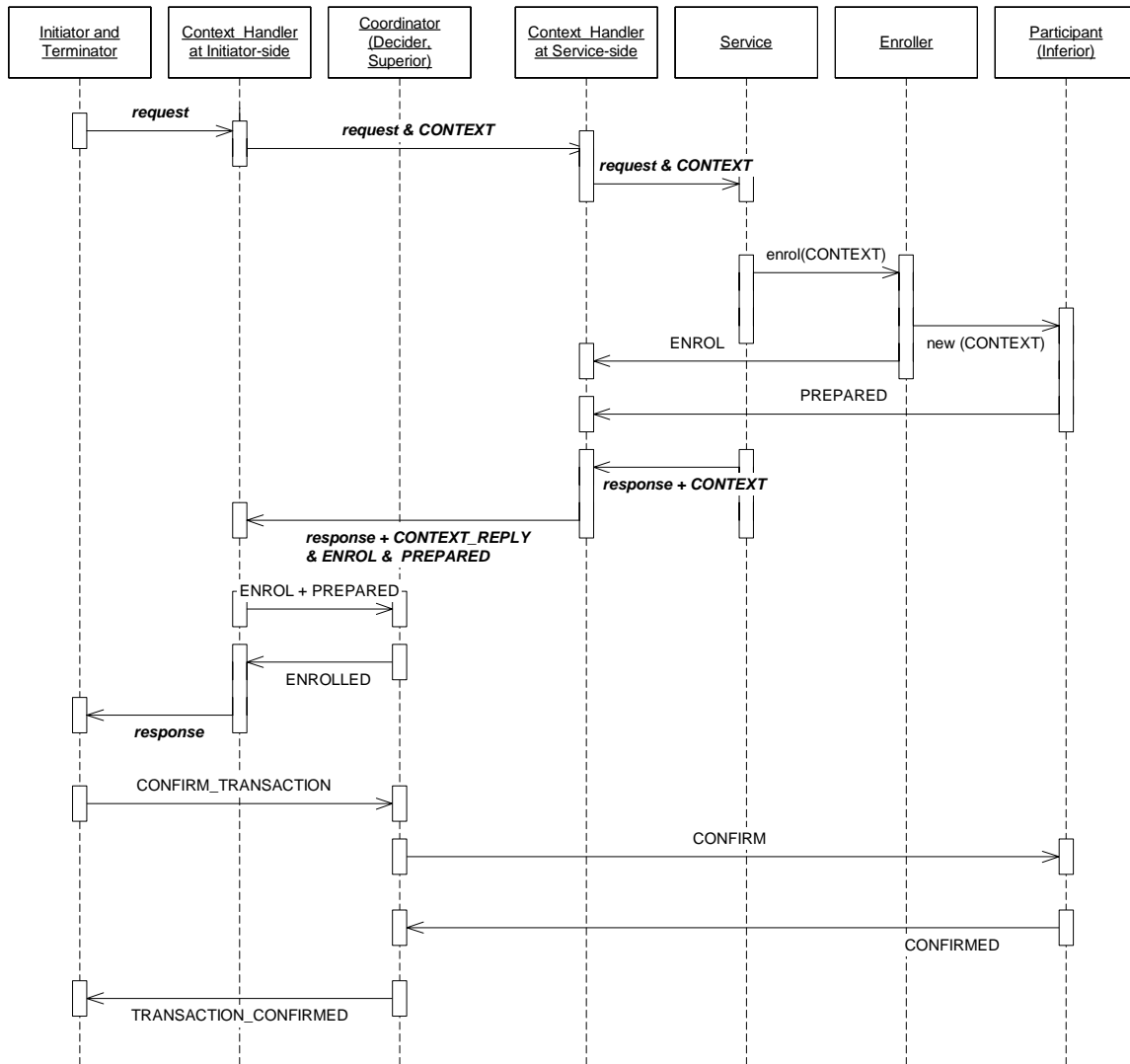
1191 Figure 16 shows a typical “one-shot” message sequence. The diagram distinguishes an additional  
1192 aspect of the application elements, labelled “context-handler”. This is not a role in the BTP  
1193 model, but is used only to distinguish a set of responsibilities and actions. In a real  
1194 implementation these might be performed by the user application itself, or might be performed by  
1195 the BTP-supporting infrastructure on the path between the application elements. (Figure 9 could  
1196 be redrawn to show the context-handlers, but to no particular benefit) As in the conventional case,  
1197 the CONTEXT is sent related to the application request (the creation of the CONTEXT by the  
1198 Factory is not shown and is the same as the conventional case). The “context-handler” is aware of  
1199 the sending of the CONTEXT.

1200 On the responder (service side), however, when the application element creates the Inferior, the  
1201 ENROL is not sent immediately, but retained. The application performs the “provisional effect”  
1202 implied by the received message and the Inferior becomes prepared and issues a PREPARED  
1203 message, which is also retained. When the application response is available, it is sent with the  
1204 retained messages and the CONTEXT\_REPLY (which indicates that the related ENROL will  
1205 complete the enrolments implied by the earlier transmission of the CONTEXT).

1206 When this group of messages is received by the context-handler on the client side, the contained  
1207 ENROL and PREPARED messages are forwarded to the Superior (whose address was on the  
1208 original CONTEXT and so is known to the context-handler). An ENROLLED message is sent  
1209 back to the context-handler, assuring it that the enrolment was successful and the application can  
1210 progress. If enrollment fails and the business transaction is atomic, confirmation must be  
1211 prevented – this responsibility falls on the context-handler and the client application, since the  
1212 failure of the enrolment implies that Superior itself is inaccessible. If enrolment fails and the  
1213 business transaction is a cohesion, the appropriate response is a matter for the application.

1214 With “one-shot”, if there are multiple Inferiors created as a result of a single application message,  
1215 there is an ENROL and PREPARED message for each one sent related with the  
1216 CONTEXT\_REPLY. If an operation fails, a CANCELLED message may be sent instead of a  
1217 PREPARED – if the Superior is atomic, this will ensure it cancels, if cohesive, the client  
1218 application will be aware of this and behave appropriately.

1219 Whether the “one-shot” mechanism is used is determined by the implementation on the  
 1220 responding (Inferior) side. This may be subject to configuration and may also be constrained by  
 1221 the application or by the binding in use.



1222

1223

**Figure 16 A message sequence showing the “one-shot” optimisation**

1224

### Resignation

1225

1226

1227

1228

1229

1230

After an Inferior is enrolled, it may be determined that the application work it is responsible for has no real effect – more exactly, that the counter-effect, if cancelled, and the final effect, if confirmed, will be identical. In such a case the Inferior can effectively un-enrol itself by sending a RESIGN message to the Superior. This can be done “spontaneously” (as far as BTP is concerned) or as a response to a received PREPARE message. It cannot be done after the Inferior has become prepared.

1231

1232

An Inferior from which RESIGN has been received is not considered an Inferior in discussion of the confirm-set – the phrase “remaining Inferiors” is used to mean only non-resigned Inferiors.

## 1233 **One-phase confirmation**

1234 If a Coordinator or Composer that has been requested to confirm has only one (remaining)  
1235 Inferior in the confirm-set, it may delegate the confirm-or-cancel decision to that Inferior, just  
1236 requesting it to confirm rather than performing the two-phase exchange. This is done by sending  
1237 the CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE message. Unlike the two-phase exchange (PREPARED received,  
1238 CONFIRM sent), it is possible with CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE for a failure to occur that leads to  
1239 the original Coordinator or Composer (and its controlling application element – the Terminator)  
1240 being uncertain whether the outcome was confirmation or cancellation.

## 1241 **Autonomous cancel, autonomous confirm and contradictions**

1242 As described above, BTP does not require a Participant, while it is responsible for holding  
1243 application resources such that can be confirmed or cancelled, to use any particular mechanism  
1244 for maintaining this state. A Participant that “becomes prepared” may choose to let the  
1245 “provisional effect” be identical to the “final effect”, and hold a compensating “counter effect”  
1246 ready to implement cancellation; or it may make the provisional effect effectively null, and only  
1247 perform the real application work as the final effect if confirmed; or the “provisional effect” may  
1248 involve performance of the application work and locking application data against other access; or  
1249 other patterns, as may be constrained or permitted by the application.

1250 Although a Participant is not required to lock data (as would be the case with some other  
1251 transaction specifications) on becoming prepared, it is nevertheless in a state of doubt, and this  
1252 doubt may have application or business implications. Accordingly it is recognised that a  
1253 Participant (or, rather the business party controlling the application element and the Participant)  
1254 may need to limit the promise made by sending PREPARED, and retain the right to apply its own  
1255 decision to confirm or cancel to the Participant and the application effects it is responsible for.  
1256 This is described as an “autonomous” decision. It is closely analogous to the heuristic decisions  
1257 recognised in other transaction specifications. The only difference is the conceptual one that  
1258 heuristic decisions are typically considered to occur only as a result of rare and unpredictable  
1259 failure, whereas BTP recognises that the right to take an autonomous decision may be critical to  
1260 the willingness of a business party to be involved in the business transaction at all. BTP therefore  
1261 allows Participants (and all Inferiors) to indicate that there are limits on how long they are willing  
1262 to promise to remain in the prepared state, and that after that time they may invoke their right of  
1263 taking an autonomous decision.

1264 Taking an autonomous decision will of course run the risk of breaking the intended consistency of  
1265 outcome across the business transaction, if the autonomous decision of the Inferior contradicts the  
1266 decision (for this Inferior) made by the Superior. The Superior will have received the  
1267 PREPARED message and thus be permitted to make a confirm decision (directly, or through  
1268 exchanges with a Terminator application element or with its own Superior). An Inferior taking an  
1269 autonomous decision informs the Superior by sending CONFIRMED or CANCELLED, as  
1270 appropriate, without waiting for an outcome order from the Superior. This may cross the outcome  
1271 message from the Superior, or the Superior may not make its decision till later. If the decisions  
1272 agree, the normal CONFIRM or CANCEL message is sent. In the case of CANCEL, this  
1273 completes the relationship – the CANCEL and CANCELLED messages acknowledge each other,  
1274 regardless of which travels first. In the case of CONFIRM, another CONFIRMED message is  
1275 needed.

1276 If the Superior's decision is contradicted by the autonomous decision, the Superior may need to  
1277 record this, report it to management systems or inform the Terminator application or its own  
1278 Superior. When this has been done (details are implementation-specific, but may be constrained  
1279 by the application), the Superior sends a CONTRADICTION message to the Inferior. If an  
1280 outcome message was sent earlier (crossing the announcement of the autonomous decision), the  
1281 Inferior will already know there was a contradiction, but the receipt of the CONTRADICTION  
1282 message informs the Inferior that the Superior knows and has done whatever it considers  
1283 necessary to cope.

1284 As mentioned, BTP allows an Inferior to inform the Superior, with a qualifier on the PREPARED  
1285 message, that the promise to remain in the prepared state will expire. In turn this allows the  
1286 application on the Superior side to avoid risking a contradictory decision by making and sending  
1287 its own decision in time. The Superior side can also indicate, with another qualifier, a minimum  
1288 time for which it expects the prepared promise to remain valid.

1289

1290 As well as deliberate and forewarned autonomous decisions, BTP recognises that failures and  
1291 exceptional conditions may force unplanned autonomous decisions. In the protocol sequence  
1292 these are treated exactly like planned autonomous decisions – if they contradict, the Superior will  
1293 be informed and a CONTRADICTION message sent to the Inferior.

1294 Autonomous decisions, planned or unplanned, are equivalent to the heuristic decisions of other  
1295 transaction systems. The term is avoided in BTP since it may carry implications that it only  
1296 occurs in an unplanned manner.

## 1297 **Recovery and failure handling**

### 1298 **Types of failure**

1299 BTP is designed to ensure the delivery of a consistent decision for a business transaction to the  
1300 parties involved, even in the event of failure. Failures can be classified as:

1301 **Communication failure:** messages between BTP actors are lost and not delivered. BTP  
1302 assumes the carrier protocol ensures that messages are either delivered correctly (without  
1303 corruption) or are lost, but does not assume that all losses are reported nor that messages  
1304 sent separately are delivered in the order of sending.

1305 **Node failure (system failure, site failure):** a machine hosting one or more BTP actors  
1306 stops processing and all its volatile data is lost. BTP assumes a site fails by stopping – it  
1307 either operates correctly or not at all, it never operates incorrectly.

1308 Communication failure may become known to a BTP implementation by an indication from the  
1309 lower layers or may be inferred (or suspected) by the expiry of a timeout. Recovery from a  
1310 communication failure requires only that the two actors can again send messages to each other  
1311 and continue or complete the progress of the business transaction.

1312 A node failure is distinguished from communication failure because there is loss of volatile state.  
1313 To ensure consistent application of the decision of a business transaction, BTP requires that some  
1314 state information will be persisted despite node failure. Exactly what real events correspond to

1315 node failure but leave the persistent information undamaged is a matter for implementation  
1316 choice, depending on application requirements; however, for most application uses, power failure  
1317 should be survivable (an exception would be if the data manipulated by the associated operations  
1318 was volatile). In all cases, there will be some level of event sufficiently catastrophic to lose  
1319 persistent information and the ability to recover– destruction of the computer or bankruptcy of the  
1320 organisation, for example.

1321 Recovery from node failure involves recreating an accessible communications endpoint in a  
1322 network node that has access to the persistent information for incomplete transactions. This may  
1323 be a recreation of the original actor using the same addresses; or using a different address; or  
1324 there may be a distinct recovery entity, which can access the persistent data, but has a different  
1325 address; other implementation approaches are possible. The recovered, and possibly relocated  
1326 actor may or may not be capable of performing new application work Restoration of the actor  
1327 from persistent information will often result in a partial loss of state, relative to the volatile state  
1328 reached before the failure. In some states, there may be total loss of knowledge of the business  
1329 transaction, including particular Superior:Inferior relationships. After recovery from node failure,  
1330 the implementation behaves much as if a communication failure had occurred.

### 1331 Persistent information

1332 BTP **requires** that certain state information is persisted – these are information that records an  
1333 Inferior’s decision to be prepared, a Superior’s decision to confirm and an Inferior’s autonomous  
1334 decision . Requiring the first two to be persistent ensures that a consistent decision can be reached  
1335 for the business transaction and that it is delivered to all involved nodes, despite failure.  
1336 Requiring an Inferior’s autonomous decision to be persistent allows BTP to ensure that, if the  
1337 autonomous decision is contradictory (i.e. opposite to the decision at the Superior), the  
1338 contradiction will be reported to the Superior, despite failures.

1339 BTP also permits, but does not require, recovery of the Superior:Inferior relationship in the active  
1340 state (unlike many transaction protocols, where a communication or node failure in active state  
1341 would invariably cause rollback of the transaction). Recovery in the active state may require that  
1342 the application exchange is resynchronised as well – BTP does not directly support this, but  
1343 allows continuation of the business transaction if the application desires it. Apart from the  
1344 (optional) recovery in active state, BTP follows the well-known presume-abort model – it is only  
1345 **required** that information be persisted when decisions are made (and not, for example, on  
1346 enrolment). This means that on recovery one side may have persistent information while the other  
1347 does not. This occurs, among other cases, when an Inferior has decided to be prepared but the  
1348 Superior never confirmed (so the decision is “presumed” to be cancelled), and when the Superior  
1349 did confirm, the Inferior applied the confirmation and removed its persistent information but the  
1350 acknowledgement message (CONFIRMED) was never received by the Superior.

1351 Information to be persisted when an Inferior decides to be prepared has to be sufficient to re-  
1352 establish communication with the Superior, to apply a confirm decision and to apply a cancel  
1353 decision. It will thus need to include the addressing and identification information for the  
1354 Superior. The information needed to apply the confirm or cancel decision will depend on the  
1355 application and the associated operations.

1356 A Superior must persist the corresponding information to allow it to re-establish communication  
1357 with the Inferior – that is the addressing and identification information for the Inferior. When it

1358 must persist this information depends on its position within the transaction tree. If it is the top of  
1359 the tree – i.e. it is the Decider for the business transaction -- it need only persist this information if  
1360 and when it makes a decision to confirm (and, for a Cohesion, only if this Inferior is in the  
1361 confirm-set). A Superior that is an intermediate in the tree – i.e. it is an Inferior to some other  
1362 Superior – must persist the information about each of its own Inferiors as part of (or before)  
1363 persisting its own decision to be prepared. For such an intermediate, the “decision to confirm” as  
1364 Superior is made when either CONFIRM is received from its Superior or it makes an autonomous  
1365 decision to confirm. If CONFIRM is received, the persistent information may be changed to show  
1366 the confirm decision, but alternatively, the receipt of the CONFIRM can be treated as the decision  
1367 itself and the CONFIRM message propagated to the Inferiors without changing the persistent  
1368 information. If the persistent information is left unchanged and there is a node failure, on  
1369 recovery the entity (as an Inferior) will be in a prepared state, and will rediscover the confirm  
1370 decision (using the recovery exchanges to its Superior) before propagating it to its Inferior(s).

1371 Since BTP messages may carry application-specified qualifiers, and the BTP messages may be  
1372 repeated if they are lost in transit (see next section), the persistent information may need to  
1373 include sufficient to recreate the qualifiers, to allow them to be resent with their carrying BTP  
1374 message. This applies both to qualifiers on PREPARED (which would be persisted by the  
1375 Inferior) and on CONFIRM (which would be persisted by the Superior).

1376 In some cases, an implementation may not need to make an active change to have a persistent  
1377 record of a decision, provided that the implementation will restore itself to the appropriate state  
1378 on recovery. For example, an implementation that, as Inferior, always used the default-is-cancel  
1379 mechanism, and recorded the timeout (to cancel) in the persistent information on becoming  
1380 prepared, and always updated or removed that record when it applied a confirm instruction could  
1381 treat the presence of an expired record as effectively a record of an autonomous cancel decision.

## 1382 **Recovery messages**

1383 Once the Superior:Inferior relationship has entered the completion phase – BTP does not  
1384 generally use special messages in recovery, but merely permits the resending of the previous  
1385 message – thus, for example, PREPARE, PREPARED, CANCEL, CONFIRM can all be sent  
1386 repeatedly. Resending the previous message means a possible loss of the original message may be  
1387 invisible to the receiver. The trigger for this re-sending is implementation dependent – a reported  
1388 communication failure, a timeout expiry while waiting for a reply, the re-establishment of  
1389 communications or the general restoration of function after a node failure are all possible triggers.  
1390 An incoming repetition of the last message received, if it has already been replied to (e.g.  
1391 receiving PREPARE after PREPARED has been sent), should normally trigger a resending of the  
1392 last message sent – since that sent message may have got lost.<sup>4</sup>

1393 While in the active phase – i.e. prior to entering completion – there is no appropriate last message  
1394 that can be sent. However, for active-phase recovery there needs to be some way for the BTP  
1395 actors to determine that the peer is still there and still aware of the Superior:Inferior relationship.  
1396 In this case, the peers can interrogate each other using the INFERIOR\_STATE or

---

<sup>4</sup> BTP's capability of binding to alternative carrier protocols is part of the motivation for not having a distinct recovery message sequence, since the carrier binding does not necessarily have a well-defined communication failure indication.



1397 SUPERIOR\_STATE messages, informing the peer of their own state and requesting a response –  
1398 which may be the opposite message, or one of the main BTP messages (which perhaps had been  
1399 lost). If it is another SUP|INFERIOR\_STATE message, that reply does not ask for a response.  
1400 Receiving a SUP|INFERIOR\_STATE messages that asks for a response does not require an  
1401 immediate response – especially if an implementation is waiting to determine a decision (perhaps  
1402 because it is itself waiting for a decision from elsewhere), an implementation may choose not to  
1403 reply until it wishes too.

1404 The SUP|INFERIOR\_STATE messages are also used as replies when the receiver of **any** of the  
1405 Superior:Inferior message has determined that there is no corresponding state information – the  
1406 targeted Superior or Inferior does not exist (or is known to have completed and is no longer an  
1407 active entity). The SUP|INFERIOR\_STATE messages with a status of “unknown” is the  
1408 indication that the state information does not exist.

1409 The SUP|INFERIOR\_STATE messages are also available as replies to any Superior:Inferior  
1410 message in the (transient, one hopes) case where, after failure an implementation cannot currently  
1411 determine whether the persistent information exists or not, or what its state is, and so cannot give  
1412 a definitive answer. The SUP|INFERIOR\_STATE messages with a status of “inaccessible” is the  
1413 indication that the existence of state information cannot be determined. The receiver of such a  
1414 message should normally treat it as a “retry later” suggestion.

#### 1415 **Redirection**

1416 As described above, BTP uses the presume-abort model for recovery. A corollary of this is that  
1417 there are cases where one side will attempt to re-establish communication when there is no  
1418 persistent information for the relationship at the far-end, because that side either never reached a  
1419 state where the state was persisted, or had been persisted, but then progressed to remove the state  
1420 information. In such cases, it is important the side that is attempting recovery can distinguish  
1421 between unsuccessful attempts to connect to the holder of the persistent information and when the  
1422 information no longer exists. If the peer information does not exist, the side that is attempting  
1423 recovery can draw appropriate conclusions (that the peer either was never prepared, never  
1424 confirmed or has already completed) and complete its part of the transaction; if it merely fails to  
1425 get through, it is stuck in attempting recovery.

1426 Two mechanisms are provided to assist implementation flexibility while allowing completion of  
1427 Superior:Inferior relationships when only one side has any persistent information. The  
1428 mechanisms are:

- 1429 • Address fields which provide the address that will be used by the peer to send messages  
1430 to an actor (effectively a “callback address”) can be a set of addresses, which are  
1431 alternatives, one of which is chosen as the target address for the future message. If the  
1432 sender of that message finds the address does not work, it can try a different alternative.
  
- 1433 • The REDIRECT message can be used to inform the peer that an address previously  
1434 given is no longer valid and to supply a replacement address (or set of addresses).  
1435 REDIRECT can be issued either as a response to receipt of a message or spontaneously.

1436 The two mechanisms can be used in combination, with one or more of the original set of  
1437 addresses just being a redirector, which does not itself ever have direct access to the state  
1438 information for the transaction, but will respond to any message with an appropriate REDIRECT.

1439 REDIRECT as a message is only used on the Superior:Inferior relationship, where each side  
1440 holds the address of the other. On the other relationships (e.g. Terminator:Decider), one side (e.g.  
1441 Terminator) has the address of the other, and initiates all the message exchanges. However, the  
1442 entity whose address is known to the other may itself move - e.g. if a Coordinator, which will be  
1443 both Decider and Superior changes its address as a Superior, it will probably change its address as  
1444 a Decider too. In this case, a FAULT reply to a misdirected message can be used, assuming there  
1445 is some entity available at, or on the path to the old address that understands BTP sufficiently to  
1446 provide the redirection information.

1447 Some implementations, in which a single addressable entity with one, constant address deals with  
1448 all transactions, distinguishing them by identifier, will not need to supply “backup” addresses  
1449 (and would only use REDIRECT if permanently migrated).

#### 1450 **Terminator:Decider failures and transaction timelimit**

1451 BTP does not provide facilities or impose requirements on the recovery of Terminator:Decider  
1452 relationships, other than allowing messages to be repeated. A Terminator may survive failures (by  
1453 retaining knowledge of the Decider’s address and identifier), but this is an implementation option.  
1454 Although a Decider (if it decides to confirm) will persist information about the confirm decision,  
1455 it is not required, after failure, to remain accessible using the address it originally gave to the  
1456 Initiator (and used by the Terminator). Any such recovery is an implementation option.

1457 A Decider has no way of initiating a call to a Terminator to ensure that it is still active, and thus  
1458 no way of detecting that a Terminator has failed. The Decider always has the right to initiate  
1459 cancellation, but if the application (Terminator) and the Decider have different views about how  
1460 long a “long time” is, then either the Decider might wait unnecessarily for a completion request  
1461 (e.g. CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION) that will never arrive, or it might initiate cancellation while  
1462 the application is still active. To avoid these irritations, a standard qualifier “Transaction  
1463 timelimit” can be used (by the Initiator) to inform the Decider when it can assume the Terminator  
1464 will not request confirmation and so it (the Decider) should initiate cancellation.

#### 1465 **Contradictions and hazard**

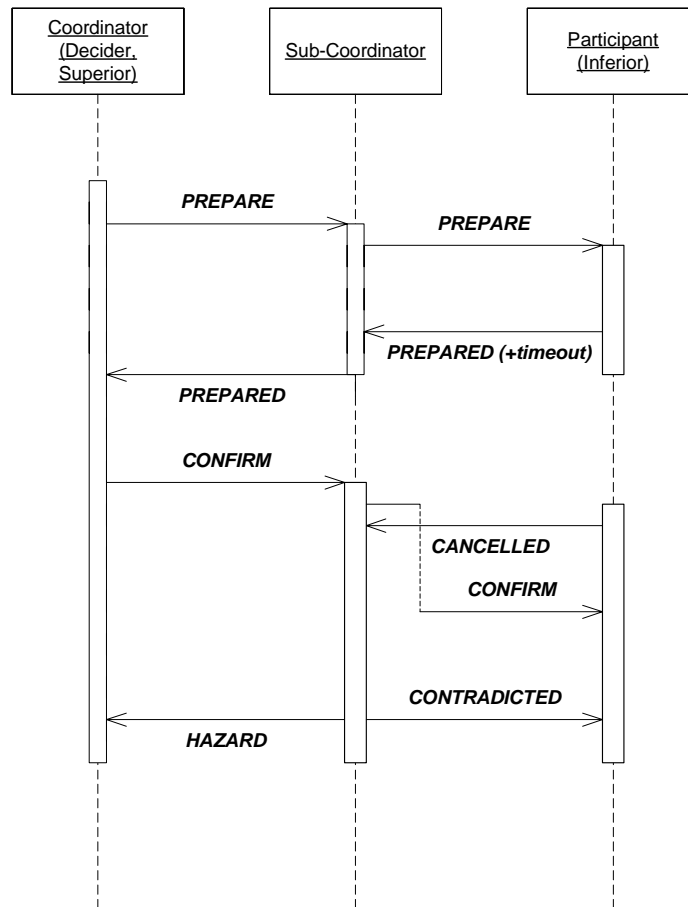
1466 As described above (see “Autonomous cancel, autonomous confirm and contradictions”), in  
1467 some circumstances an Inferior may apply a decision that is contradictory to the decision of the  
1468 Superior. This can occur in a semi-planned manner, when the Inferior has announced a timeout on  
1469 the PREPARED message but no outcome message has been received, or as a result of an  
1470 exceptional condition that forces the Inferior to break the promise implicit in PREPARED,  
1471 regardless of timers. In both cases, this is considered an autonomous decision by the Inferior. An  
1472 autonomous decision, of itself, does not imply a contradiction – it only results in a contradiction if  
1473 the decision is opposite to that of the Superior (in the case of a cohesive Superior, opposite to the  
1474 decision that applies to this Inferior).

1475 In order to ensure that a contradiction is detected despite node and communication failures, it is  
1476 required that information about the taking of the autonomous decision be persisted until a BTP

1477 message received from the Superior indicates either that there was no contradiction (the decisions  
1478 were in line – CANCEL is received after an autonomous cancel or CONFIRM is received after an  
1479 autonomous confirm) or that the Superior is aware of the contradiction (CONTRADICTION is  
1480 received). Note that the Inferior will become aware of the fact of the contradiction when it  
1481 receives the “wrong” message, but must retain the record of its own decision until it receives the  
1482 CONTRADICTION message, which tells it the Superior knows too.

1483 The Superior’s action on becoming aware of the contradiction is not determined by this  
1484 specification. In particular, if the Superior is a Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer, it is not  
1485 required by this specification to report the contradiction to its own Superior (which may, for  
1486 example, be controlled by a different organisation). The Superior may report the problem to  
1487 management systems or record it for manual repair. However, BTP does provide mechanisms to  
1488 report the contradiction to the next higher Superior (if there is one) or to the Terminator  
1489 application element.

1490 A contradiction occurring in an Inferior will usually mean the immediate Superior has a “mixed”  
1491 condition – some of the application work it was responsible for has confirmed, some has  
1492 cancelled (and contrary to any cohesion confirm-set selection). If the Superior is a Sub-  
1493 coordinator or Sub-composer, it can report the mixed condition to its own Superior with the  
1494 HAZARD message. If the Superior is the top-most in the tree, it can report the problem with the  
1495 INFERIOR\_STATUSES message, which will detail the state of all the Inferiors. Figure 17 shows  
1496 a message sequence in a transaction tree with two levels. The Participant makes an autonomous  
1497 cancel decision, but the Coordinator decides to confirm. The confirm decision from the  
1498 Coordinator, passed on by the Sub-coordinator crosses with the CANCELLED message from the  
1499 Participant. The Participant waits for the CANCELLED from the Sub-coordinator, which chooses  
1500 to report the problem with HAZARD to the Coordinator.



1501

1502

**Figure 17 Message sequence showing contradiction, reported with HAZARD**

1503

If a Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer having sent (or attempted to send) the outcome message to its Inferiors, is temporarily unable to get a response (CONFIRMED or CANCELLED), it may either wait until a response does come back or choose to reply to its own Superior with a HAZARD message indicating that a contradiction is “possible”. If it does choose to send HAZARD, it is required to persist a record of this until it receives a CONTRADICTION message from the Superior, or a message from the Inferior indicating there was no contradiction in fact.

1509

HAZARD is also used to indicate that it has become impossible to cleanly and consistently achieve either a confirmed or a cancelled state for the application work. In this case, there is can be no guarantee that the problem will be reliably reported – especially because it may be the inability to persist information that is the cause of the problem.

1513

### **Relation of BTP to application and carrier protocols**

1514

BTP messages are communicated between actors in two distinguishable circumstances:

1515

- a) in establishing and progressing the outcome and control relationships between BTP actors, and between application elements and BTP actors – Initiator:Factory, Terminator:Decider, Superior:Inferior etc.

1516

1517

1518           b) in association with application messages that are communicated between application  
1519           elements.

1520       In the first case, interoperable communication requires a specification of how the abstract BTP  
1521       messages are represented and encoded, and how they are transmitted. This specification is a  
1522       **carrier protocol binding** (or just “binding”, if the context is clear). BTP allows bindings to a  
1523       multiplicity of carrier protocols. The only requirement that BTP makes is that the transmission of  
1524       a message either delivers an uncorrupted message or fails. BTP does not require that the carrier  
1525       report failure to deliver a message, to either side, nor that messages are delivered in the order they  
1526       are sent (though implementations can take advantage of information from a richer carrier, which  
1527       can improve performance in various ways). BTP messages communicated in this way have  
1528       semantics that are defined in this specification – a PREPARE message (for example), refers back  
1529       to the ENROL via the “inferior-identifier” parameter and is an instruction to the Inferior to  
1530       become and report that it is prepared.

1531       In the second case, the full semantics cannot be defined in this specification. Interoperation with  
1532       BTP requires that the parties have a common understanding of what is being confirmed or  
1533       cancelled, but this mutual understanding is defined by the contract of the application, not by BTP.  
1534       (The contract may be explicit or implicit, declared by one side as take-it-or-leave-it, or may be  
1535       negotiated in some way.) Part of this contract will include how the combination of the application  
1536       protocol (i.e. the application messages and their sequencing) and BTP operate such that the two  
1537       sides are agreed as to which application operations are part of which business transaction. This  
1538       will often be achieved by sending application messages and BTP messages in “association” in  
1539       some way – thus an application message sent in association with a CONTEXT can be specified  
1540       (by the application contract) to mean that if work is done as result of the receipt of the message,  
1541       one or more Inferiors should be enrolled to apply the confirm/cancel decision to that work.  
1542       Similarly, an application message may be sent associated with an ENROL with the contractual  
1543       understanding that the message refers to some application work that has been made the  
1544       responsibility of the Inferior being enrolled.

1545       The concrete representation of this “association” is also a matter for the application protocol  
1546       specification. There are several ways this can be done, including:

- 1547           • the BTP message is contained within the application message, or both are contained  
1548           within a larger construct;
- 1549           • the application message contains a field that is the superior-identifier or inferior-  
1550           identifier that is also present on the CONTEXT or the ENROL
- 1551           • the BTP message contains a qualifier that references (a field of) the application message  
1552           in some way (e.g. if the application message is an invoice, the qualifier might contain the  
1553           invoice number)
- 1554           • the encoding of the BTP and application messages reference each other (e.g. using XML  
1555           id and refid attributes)

1556 In all cases, the application specification<sup>5</sup> will need to define the mechanism so that both parties  
1557 have common understanding. Many applications will use the same mechanism and their  
1558 specifications can therefore take advantage of standard patterns, and their implementations of  
1559 standard tools.

1560 The association of an application message with a BTP message is analogous to the concept of  
1561 “related” BTP messages. “Related” BTP messages are sent as a group, with a declared and  
1562 defined semantic for the group. Associated application and BTP messages can be considered as  
1563 “related”, with the proviso that the semantic is defined by the application, not by BTP.

1564 There is no necessary relationship between how the application messages and any associated BTP  
1565 messages are transmitted by carrier protocols, and the carrier binding for the BTP messages. BTP  
1566 messages are invariably sent to a BTP actor whose address has been passed to the sender by some  
1567 means – thus a CONTEXT contains the address of the Superior to which ENROLs will be sent,  
1568 and the ENROL contains the address of the Inferior. Similarly, BEGUN contains the address (as  
1569 Decider) of the new Composer or Coordinator. These addresses are all sets of addresses (possibly  
1570 of cardinality one), and each individual address identifies which binding is to be used. Thus, for  
1571 example, when a CONTEXT is sent associated with an application message, the ENROL will  
1572 travel on a carrier binding identified by the particular address from the CONTEXT that the  
1573 Enroller chooses to use – which may have no relationship to how the application message arrived.

1574 Despite this, it will be common that the application binding and the BTP binding will use the  
1575 same carrier. This is the case in the bindings specified in this edition of the specification, which  
1576 define a binding of BTP to SOAP 1.1 over HTTP. Included in this SOAP/HTTP binding  
1577 specification, are rules that allow an application to associate (relate) a single CONTEXT or a  
1578 single ENROL (carried in the SOAP header) with the application message(s) carried in the SOAP  
1579 body.

## 1580 **Other elements**

### 1581 **Identifiers**

1582 An Identifier is a globally unambiguous identification of the state corresponding to one of  
1583 Decider, Superior or Inferior. Where a single entity has more than one of these roles (at the same  
1584 node in the same transaction, as with a Sub-coordinator that is both Superior and Inferior), the  
1585 Identifiers may be the same or different, at implementation option - they are distinguished by  
1586 which messages the Identifier is used on. (A Superior has only one Superior-identifier, although it  
1587 may be in multiple Superior:Inferior relationships, each with a separate state in terms of the state  
1588 table).

1589 The state identified by an Identifier can be accessed by BTP messages sent to any of the addresses  
1590 supplied with the Identifier in the appropriate message (CONTEXT, BEGUN, ENROL), or as  
1591 updated by REDIRECT. An Identifier itself has no location implications. (Identifiers are  
1592 specified, in the XML representation, as syntactically URIs - by their use as names of BTP

---

<sup>5</sup> The “application specification”, or “application protocol specification” may be very informal or may be a standardised agreement.

1593 entities, they are URNs. If an Identifier happens to specify an network location (i.e. it is a URL),  
1594 it is treated as an opaque value by BTP)

1595 Identifiers are specified as being globally unambiguous - the same Identifier only ever identifies  
1596 one Decider, Superior or Inferior over all systems and all time. In practice, an Identifier could be  
1597 re-used if there is no possibility of the colliding values being confused. However implementations  
1598 are recommended to use truly unambiguous Identifiers (that is to use them as URNs).

## 1599 **Addresses**

1600 In most cases, BTP actors that need to communicate are informed of each others addresses from  
1601 received BTP messages. When an Inferior is to be enrolled, a CONTEXT message which  
1602 contains the address of the Superior will have been received or otherwise passed to the Enroller  
1603 and the Inferior. The ENROL message received by the Superior contains the address of the  
1604 Inferior. The BEGUN returned from a Factory to the Initiator contains the address of the Decider,  
1605 and this can be passed to the Terminator or any Status Requestor.

1606 The addresses carried in these messages (which are effectively “call-back” addresses, to be used  
1607 as the destination of future messages) are sets of tripartite addresses. Each contains an identifier  
1608 (binding name) for the binding to an underlying transport, or carrier protocol, a “binding  
1609 address”, in a format specific to the carrier which is the information necessary to connect using  
1610 that carrier, and an optional additional information field. This additional information is opaque to  
1611 all but the future destination (which also created this address for itself) and is used however the  
1612 implementation there wishes (e.g. it can be used to distinguish a particular program object, or to  
1613 relay on, perhaps over a different protocol). The multiple members of the set allow support of  
1614 multiple carrier bindings (including both different versions of standard bindings and proprietary  
1615 bindings) and for relocation of the BTP actor.

1616 When a message is actually to be sent, the sender, possessing the set of addresses for the  
1617 destination, chooses one - restricting its choice to bindings that it supports obviously, but not  
1618 otherwise constrained by the specification. The binding address will be used by the senders  
1619 carrier implementation (depending on the protocol, the address may or may not be transmitted –  
1620 with http, for example, it is), The additional information, if present, will be included in the BTP  
1621 message. The chosen address is considered the “target-address” when considering the abstract  
1622 message, but only the additional information will normally appear within the encoded BTP-  
1623 message (the encoding used is part of the binding specification, which could require that all of the  
1624 address is (redundantly) transmitted, if the specifier so chose).

1625 Where a BTP message invokes a reply – as with the Initiator:Factory, Terminator:Decider and  
1626 Status Requestor:various roles – the receiver (Factory, Decider, etc) of the message will not know  
1627 *a priori* the address of the sender. Accordingly, in these cases the abstract messages are specified  
1628 as containing a single “reply-address”. Depending on the binding, and the particular use of the  
1629 binding, the “reply-address” may be directly represented in the encoding of the BTP message, or  
1630 may be implicit in the carrier protocol. Similar considerations apply in the Superior:Inferior  
1631 relationship, where although the addresses are normally known by the other side, there are cases  
1632 when a message is received, and must be responded to, but the peer is unknown. Accordingly, the  
1633 Superior:Inferior messages contain (in abstract) a single “senders-address”. As with the “reply-  
1634 address”es, it may be implicit in the carrier protocol.

1635 The CONTEXT message does not contain a “target-address”, even as an abstract message, as it is  
1636 never transmitted between BTP actors on its own – it is always either related to a BTP BEGIN or  
1637 BEGUN message, or is passed between application elements with some (application-detailed)  
1638 association with application messages.

1639 **Qualifiers**

1640 Qualifiers are elements of the BTP messages used to exchange additional information between  
1641 the actors. Qualifiers can be specified in the BTP specification (“standard qualifiers”), by industry  
1642 groups, by BTP implmentors or for the purposes of particular applications. Of the standard  
1643 qualifiers in this version of the specification some are constraints on the BTP contract, such as  
1644 time limits, and some are further identifiers used to distinguish specific parties in the BTP  
1645 interchange. Non-standard qualifiers could extend the protocol or carry application-specific  
1646 information.



## 1647 Part 2. Normative Specification of BTP

### 1648 **Actors, Roles and Relationships**

1649 Actors are software agents which process computations. BTP actors are addressable for the  
1650 purposes of receiving application and BTP protocol messages transmitted over some underlying  
1651 communications or carrier protocol. (See section “Addressing” for more detail.)

1652 BTP actors play roles in the sending, receiving and processing of messages. These roles are  
1653 associated with responsibilities or obligations under the terms of software contracts defined by  
1654 this specification. (These contracts are stated formally in the sections entitled “Abstract Messages  
1655 and Associated Contracts” and “State Tables”.) A BTP actor’s computations put the contracts into  
1656 effect.

1657 A role is defined and described in terms of a single business transaction. An implementation  
1658 supporting a role may, as an addressable entity, play the same role in multiple business  
1659 transactions, simultaneously or consecutively, or a separate addressable entity may be created for  
1660 each transaction. This is a choice for the implementer, and the addressing mechanisms allow  
1661 interoperation between implementations that make different choices.

1662 Within a single transaction, one actor may play several roles, or each role may be assigned to a  
1663 distinct actor. This is again a choice for the implementer. An actor playing a role is termed an  
1664 “actor-in-role”.

1665 Actors may interoperate, in the sense that the roles played by actors may be implemented using  
1666 software created by different vendors for each actor-in-role. The section “Conformance”, gives  
1667 guidelines on the groups of roles that may be implemented in a partial, interoperable  
1668 implementation of BTP.

1669 The descriptions of the roles concentrate on the normal progression of a business transaction, and  
1670 some of the more important divergences from this. They do not cover all exception cases – the  
1671 message set definition and the state tables provide a more comprehensive specification.

1672 *Note – A BTP role is approximately equivalent to an interface in some distributed*  
1673 *computing mechanisms, or a port-type in WSDL. The definition of a role includes*  
1674 *behaviour.*

### 1675 **Relationships**

1676 There are two primary relationships in BTP.

- 1677 • Between an application element that determines that a business transaction should be  
1678 completed (the role of Terminator) and the BTP actor at the top of the transaction tree (the  
1679 role of Decider);
- 1680 • Between BTP actors within the tree, where one (the Superior) will inform the other (the  
1681 Inferior) what the outcome decision is.

1682 These primary relationships are involved in arriving at a decision on the outcome of a business  
1683 transaction, and propagating that decision to all parties to the transaction. Taking the path that is  
1684 followed when a business transaction is confirmed:

- 1685 1. The Terminator determines that the business transaction should confirm, if it can; or  
1686 (for a Cohesion), which parts should confirm
- 1687 2. The Terminator asks the Decider to apply the desired outcome to the tree, if it can  
1688 guarantee the consistency of the confirm decision
- 1689 3. The Decider, which is Superior to one or more Inferiors, asks its Inferiors if they can  
1690 agree to a confirm decision (for a Cohesion, this may not be all the Inferiors)
- 1691 4. If any of those Inferiors are also Superiors, they ask their Inferiors and so on down  
1692 the tree
- 1693 5. Inferiors that are not Superiors report if they can agree to a confirm to their Superior
- 1694 6. Inferiors that are also Superiors report their agreement only if they received such  
1695 agreement from their Inferiors, and can agree themselves
- 1696 7. Eventually agreement (or not) is reported to the Decider. If all have agreed, the  
1697 Decider makes and persists the confirm decision (hence the term “Decider” – it  
1698 decides, everything else just asked); if any have disagreed, or if the confirm decision  
1699 cannot be persisted, a cancel decision is made
- 1700 8. The Decider, as Superior tells its Inferiors of the outcome
- 1701 9. Inferiors that are also Superiors tell their Inferiors, recursively down the tree
- 1702 10. The Decider replies to the Terminator’s request to confirm, reporting the outcome  
1703 decision

1704 There are other relationships that are secondary to Terminator:Decider, Superior:Inferior, mostly  
1705 involved in the establishment of the primary relationships. The various particular relationships  
1706 can be grouped as the “control” relationships – primarily Terminator:Decider, but also  
1707 Initiator:Factory; and the “outcome” relationships – primarily Superior:Inferior, but also  
1708 Enroller:Superior.

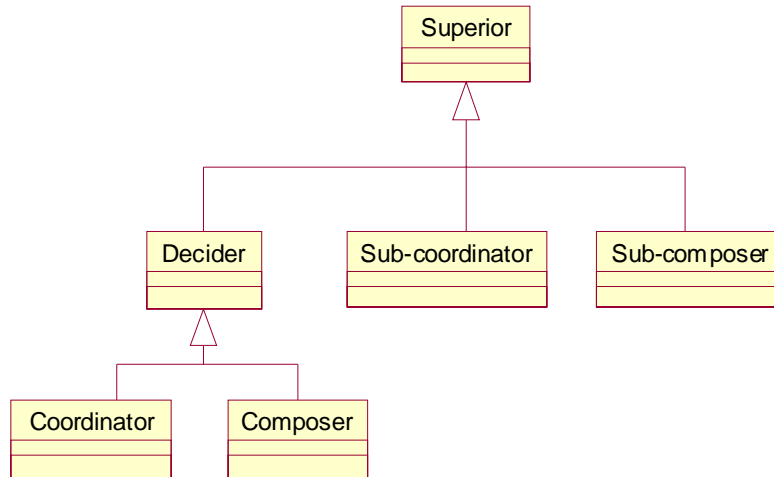
1709 The two groups of relationships are linked in that a Decider is a Superior to one or more Inferiors.  
1710 There are also similarities in the semantics of some of the exchanges (messages) within the  
1711 relationships. However they differ in that

- 1712 1. All exchanges between Terminator and Decider are initiated by the Terminator (it is  
1713 essentially a request/response relationship); either of Superior or Inferior may initiate  
1714 messages to the other
- 1715 2. The Superior:Inferior relationship is recoverable – depending on the progress of the  
1716 relationship, the two sides will re-establish their shared state after failure; the  
1717 Terminator:Decider relationship is not recoverable

1718 3. The nature of the Superior:Inferior relationship requires that the two parties know of  
 1719 each other's addresses from when the relationship is established; the Decider does not  
 1720 need to know the address of the Terminator (provided it has some way of returning  
 1721 the response to a received message).

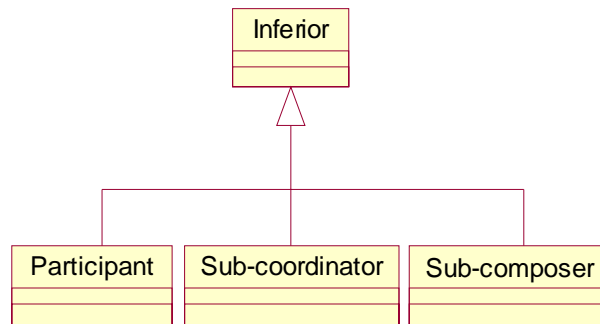
1722 **Roles**

1723 Figure 18 and Figure 19 show the BTP roles that are specialisations of the central Superior and  
 1724 Inferior roles.



1725  
 1726

**Figure 18 Superior and derived roles**



1727  
 1728

**Figure 19 Inferior and derived roles**

1729 In the following sections, the responsibility of each role is defined, and the messages that are sent  
 1730 or received by that role are listed. Note that some roles exist only to have a name for an actor that  
 1731 issues a message and receives a reply to that message. Some of these roles may be played by  
 1732 several actors in the course of a single business transaction.

1733 For each role, a table shows which messages are received and sent. Where the messages appear  
 1734 on the same line, the second is a reply to the first. (Consequently the columns are sometimes sent  
 1735 first, received second, sometimes vice versa.)

1736 **Roles involved in the outcome relationships**

1737 **Superior**

1738 Accepts enrolments of Inferiors from Enrollers, establishing a Superior:Inferior relationship with  
 1739 each. In cooperation with other actors and constrained by the messages exchanged with the  
 1740 Inferior, the Superior determines the **Outcome** applicable to the Inferior and informs the Inferior  
 1741 by sending CONFIRM or CANCEL. This outcome can be confirm only if a PREPARED message  
 1742 is received from the Inferior, and if a record, identifying the Inferior can be persisted. (Whether  
 1743 this record is also a record of a confirm decision depends on the Superior's position in the  
 1744 business transaction as a whole.). The Superior must retain this persistent record until it receives a  
 1745 CONFIRMED (or, in exceptional cases, CANCELLED or HAZARD) from the Inferior.

1746 A Superior may delegate the taking of the confirm or cancel decision to an Inferior, if there is  
 1747 only one Inferior, by sending CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE.

1748 A Superior may be *Atomic* or *Cohesive*; an Atomic Superior will apply the same decision to all of  
 1749 its Inferiors; a Cohesive Superior may apply confirm to some Inferiors and cancel to others, or  
 1750 may confirm some after others have reported cancellation. The set of Inferiors that the Superior  
 1751 confirms (or attempts to confirm) is called the “confirm-set”.

1752 If RESIGN is received from an Inferior, the Superior:Inferior relationship is ended; the Inferior  
 1753 has no further effect on the behaviour of the Superior as a whole.

| Superior receives        | Superior sends    |
|--------------------------|-------------------|
| ENROL                    | ENROLLED          |
|                          | PREPARE           |
|                          | CONFIRM           |
|                          | CANCEL            |
|                          | RESIGNED          |
|                          | CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE |
|                          | CONTRADICTION     |
|                          | SUPERIOR_STATE    |
| PREPARED                 |                   |
| CONFIRMED                |                   |
| CANCELLED                |                   |
| HAZARD                   |                   |
| RESIGN                   |                   |
| INFERIOR_STATE           |                   |
| REQUEST_STATUS           | STATUS            |
| REQUEST_INFERIORS_STATUS | INFERIOR_STATUSES |

1754

1755 Receipt of ENROL establishes a new Superior:Inferior relationship (unless the ENROL is a  
 1756 duplicate). ENROLLED is sent only if a reply is asked for on the ENROL.

1757 **Inferior**

1758 Responsible for applying the Outcome to some set of associated operations – the application  
 1759 determines which operations are the responsibility of a particular Inferior.

1760 An Inferior is **Enrolled** with a single Superior (hereafter referred to as “its Superior”),  
 1761 establishing a Superior:Inferior relationship. If the Inferior is able to ensure that either a confirm  
 1762 or cancel decision can be applied to the associated operations, and can persist information to  
 1763 retain that condition, it sends a PREPARED message to the Superior. When the Outcome is  
 1764 received from the Superior, the Inferior applies it, deletes the persistent information, and replies  
 1765 with CANCELLED or CONFIRMED as appropriate.

1766 If an Inferior is unable to come to a prepared state, it cancels the associated operations and  
 1767 informs the Superior with a CANCELLED message. If it is unable to either come to a prepared  
 1768 state, or to cancel the associated operations, it informs the Superior with a HAZARD message.

1769 An Inferior that has become prepared may, exceptionally, make an autonomous decision to be  
 1770 applied to the associated operations, without waiting for the Outcome from the Superior. It is  
 1771 required to persist this autonomous decision and report it to the Superior with CONFIRMED or  
 1772 CANCELLED as appropriate. If, when CONFIRM or CANCEL is received, the autonomous  
 1773 decision and the decision received from the Superior are contradictory, the Inferior must retain  
 1774 the record of the autonomous decision until receiving a CONTRADICTION message.

| Inferior receives        | Inferior sends    |
|--------------------------|-------------------|
| PREPARE                  |                   |
| CONFIRM                  |                   |
| CANCEL                   |                   |
| RESIGNED                 |                   |
| CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE        |                   |
| CONTRADICTION            |                   |
| SUPERIOR_STATE           |                   |
|                          | PREPARED          |
|                          | CONFIRMED         |
|                          | CANCELLED         |
|                          | HAZARD            |
|                          | RESIGN            |
|                          | INFERIOR_STATE    |
| REQUEST_STATUS           | STATUS            |
| REQUEST_INFERIORS_STATUS | INFERIOR_STATUSES |

1775

1776 **Enroller**

1777 Causes the enrolment of an Inferior with a Superior. This role is distinguished because in some  
 1778 implementations the enrolment request will be performed by the application, in some the  
 1779 application will ask the actor that will play the role of Inferior to enrol itself, and a Factory may  
 1780 enrol a new Inferior (which will also be Superior) as a result of receiving BEGIN&CONTEXT.

|                |                   |
|----------------|-------------------|
| Enroller sends | Enroller receives |
| ENROL          | ENROLLER          |

1781

1782 ENROLLED is received only if the Enroller asked for a response when the ENROL was sent.

1783 An ENROL message sent from an Enroller that did not require an ENROLLED response may be  
 1784 modified *en route* to the Superior by an intermediate actor to ask for an ENROLLED response to  
 1785 be sent to the intermediate. (This may occur in the “one-shot” scenario, where an ENROL/no-rsp-  
 1786 req is received in relation to a CONTEXT\_REPLY/related; the receiver of the  
 1787 CONTEXT\_REPLY will need to ensure the enrolment is successful).

1788 **Participant**

1789 An Inferior which is specialized for the purposes of an application. Some application operations  
 1790 are associated directly with the Participant, which is responsible for determining whether a  
 1791 prepared condition is possible for them, and for applying the outcome. (“associated directly” as  
 1792 opposed to involving another BTP Superior:Inferior relationship, in which this actor is the  
 1793 Superior).

1794 The associated operations may be performed by the actor that has the role of Participant, or they  
 1795 may be performed by another actor, and only the confirm/cancel application is performed by the  
 1796 Participant.

1797 In either case, the Participant, as part of becoming prepared (i.e. before it can send PREPARED  
 1798 to the Superior), will persist information allowing it apply a confirm decision to the operations  
 1799 and to apply a cancel decision. The nature of this information depends on the operations.

1800 *Note – Possible approaches are:*

- 1801 • *The operations may be performed completely and the Participant persists*  
 1802 *information to perform counter-effect operations (compensating operations) to*  
 1803 *apply cancellation;*
- 1804 • *The operations may be just checked and not performed at all; the Participant*  
 1805 *persists information to perform them to apply confirmation;*
- 1806 • *The Participants persists the prior state of data affected by the operations and the*  
 1807 *operations are performed; the Participant restores the prior state to apply*  
 1808 *cancellation;*
- 1809 • *As the previous, but other access to the affected data is forbidden until the decision*  
 1810 *is known*

1811 Since a Participant is an Inferior, it sends and receives the messages for an Inferior.

1812 **Sub-coordinator**

1813 An Inferior which is also an Atomic Superior.

1814 A sub-coordinator is the Inferior in one Superior:Inferior relationship and the Superior in one or  
 1815 more Superior:Inferior relationships.

1816 From the perspective of its Superior (the one the sub-coordinator is Inferior to), there is no  
1817 difference between a sub-coordinator and any other Inferior. From this perspective, the  
1818 “associated operations” of the sub-coordinator as an Inferior include the relationships with its  
1819 Inferiors.

1820 A sub-coordinator does not become prepared (and send PREPARED to its Superior) until and  
1821 unless it has received PREPARED (or RESIGN) from all its Inferiors. The outcome is propagated  
1822 to all Inferiors.

1823 Since a Sub-coordinator is both an Inferior and a Superior, it sends and receives the messages for  
1824 both.

### 1825 **Sub-composer**

1826 An Inferior which is also a Cohesive Superior.

1827 Like a sub-coordinator, a sub-composer cannot be distinguished from any other Inferior from the  
1828 perspective of its Superior.

1829 A sub-composer is similar to a sub-coordinator, except that the constraints linking the different  
1830 Inferiors concern only those Inferiors in the confirm-set. How the confirm-set is controlled, and  
1831 when, is not defined in this specification.

1832 If the sub-composer is instructed to cancel, by receiving a CANCEL message from its Superior,  
1833 the cancellation is propagated to all its Inferiors.

1834 Since a Sub-composer is both an Inferior and a Superior, it sends and receives the messages for  
1835 both.

### 1836 **Roles involved in the control relationships**

#### 1837 **Decider**

1838 A Superior that is not also the Inferior on a Superior:Inferior relationship. It is the top-node in the  
1839 transaction tree and receives requests from a Terminator as to the desired outcome for the  
1840 business transaction. If the Terminator asks the Decider to confirm the business transaction, it is  
1841 the responsibility of the Decider to finally take the confirm decision. The taking of the decision is  
1842 synonymous with the persisting of information identifying the Inferiors that are to be confirmed.  
1843 An Inferior cannot be confirmed unless PREPARED has been received from it.

1844 A Decider is instructed to cancel by receiving CANCEL\_TRANSACTION.

1845 A Decider that is an Atomic Superior (all Inferiors will have the same outcome) is a Coordinator.  
1846 A Decider that is a Cohesive Superior (some Inferiors may cancel, some confirm) is a Cohesion.

| Decider receives    | Decider sends   |
|---------------------|---|
| CONFIRM_TRANSACTION | TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED<br>TRANSACTION_CANCELLED<br>INFERIOR_STATUSES |

| Decider receives          | Decider sends                              |
|---------------------------|--|
| CANCEL_TRANSACTION        | TRANSACTION_CANCELLED<br>INFERIOR_STATUSES |
| REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES | INFERIOR_STATUSES                          |

1847

1848 A Decider is also a Superior and thus sends and receives the messages for a Superior.

### 1849 **Coordinator**

1850 A Decider that is an Atomic Superior. The same outcome decision will be applied to all Inferiors  
1851 (excluding any from which RESIGN is received).

1852 PREPARED must be received from all remaining Inferiors for a confirm decision to be taken.

1853 A Coordinator must make a cancel decision if

- 1854 • it is instructed to cancel by the Terminator
- 1855 • if CANCELLED is received from any Inferior
- 1856 • if it is unable to persist a confirm decision

1857 Since a Coordinator is a Decider, it receives the messages appropriate for a Decider and a  
1858 Superior.

### 1859 **Composer**

1860 A Decider that is a Cohesive Superior. If the Terminator requests confirmation of the Cohesion,  
1861 that request will determine the confirm-set of the Cohesion.

1862 PREPARED must be received from all Inferiors in the confirm-set (excluding any from which  
1863 RESIGN is received) for a confirm decision to be taken.

1864 A Composer must make a cancel decision (applying to all Inferiors) if

- 1865 • it is instructed to cancel by the Terminator
- 1866 • if CANCELLED is received from any Inferior in the confirm-set
- 1867 • if it is unable to persist a confirm decision

1868 A Composer may be asked to prepare some or all of its Inferiors by receiving  
1869 PREPARE\_INFERIORS. It issues PREPARE to any of those Inferiors from which none of  
1870 PREPARED, CANCELLED or RESIGN have been received, and replies to the  
1871 PREPARE\_INFERIORS with INFERIOR\_STATUSES.

1872 A Composer may be asked to cancel some of its Inferiors, but not itself, by receiving  
1873 CANCEL\_INFERIORS.



| Composer receives | Composer sends    |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| PREPARE_INFERIORS | INFERIOR_STATUSES |
| CANCEL_INFERIORS  | INFERIOR_STATUSES |

## 1874 Terminator

1875 Asks a Decider to confirm the business transaction, or instructs it to cancel all or (for a Cohesion)  
1876 part of the business transaction.

1877 All communications between Terminator and Decider are initiated by the Terminator. A  
1878 Terminator is usually an application element.

1879 A request to confirm is made by sending CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION to the target Decider. If  
1880 the Decider is a Cohesion Composer, the Terminator may select which of the Composer's  
1881 Inferiors are to be included in the confirm-set. If the Decider is an Atom Coordinator, all Inferiors  
1882 are included. After applying the decision, the Decider replies with  
1883 TRANSACTION\_CONFIRMED, TRANSACTION\_CANCELLED or (in the case of problems)  
1884 INFERIOR\_STATUSES.

1885 A Terminator may ask a Composer (but not a Coordinator) to prepare some or all of its Inferiors  
1886 with PREPARE\_INFERIORS. The Composer replies with INFERIOR\_STATUSES.

1887 A Terminator may send CANCEL\_TRANSACTION to instruct the Decider to cancel the whole  
1888 business transaction., The Decider replies with CANCEL\_COMPLETE if all Inferiors cancel  
1889 successfully, and with INFERIOR\_STATUSES in the case of problems.. If the Decider is a  
1890 Cohesion Composer, the Terminator may send CANCEL\_INFERIORS to cancel some of the  
1891 Inferiors; the Decider always replies with INFERIOR\_STATUSES.

1892 A Terminator may check the status of the Inferiors of the Decider by sending  
1893 REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES. The Decider replies with INFERIOR\_STATUSES.

| Terminator sends          | Terminator receives   |
|---------------------------|---|
| CONFIRM_TRANSACTION       | TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED<br>TRANSACTION_CANCELLED<br>INFERIOR_STATUSES |
| CANCEL_TRANSACTION        | TRANSACTION_CANCELLED<br>INFERIOR_STATUSES                          |
| PREPARE_INFERIORS         | INFERIOR_STATUSES   |
| CANCEL_INFERIORS          | INFERIOR_STATUSES   |
| REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES | INFERIOR_STATUSES   |

## 1894 Initiator

1895 Requests a **Factory** to create a Superior – this will either be a Decider (representing a new top-  
1896 level business transaction) or a sub-coordinator or sub-composer to be the Inferior of an existing  
1897 business transaction.

| Initiator sends | Initiator receives |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| BEGIN           | BEGUN & CONTEXT    |
| BEGIN & CONTEXT | BEGUN & CONTEXT    |

1898

1899 The received CONTEXT is that for the new Superior.

## 1900 **Factory**

1901 Creates Superiors and returns the CONTEXT for the new Superior. The following types of  
1902 Superior are created :

1903                   Decider, which is either  
1904                               Composer or  
1905                               Coordinator  
1906                   Sub-composer  
1907                   Sub-coordinator  
1908

| Factory receives | Factory sends   |
|------------------|-----------------|
| BEGIN            | BEGUN & CONTEXT |
| BEGIN & CONTEXT  | BEGUN & CONTEXT |

1909

1910 If the BEGIN has no related CONTEXT, the Factory creates a Decider, either a Cohesion  
1911 Composer or an Atom Coordinator, as determined by the “superior type” parameter on the  
1912 BEGIN.

1913 If the BEGIN has a related CONTEXT, the new Superior is also enrolled as an Inferior of the  
1914 Superior identified by the CONTEXT. The new Superior is thus a sub-composer or sub-  
1915 coordinator, as determined by the “superior type” parameter on the BEGIN.

## 1916 **Other roles**

### 1917 **Redirector**

1918 Sends a REDIRECT message to inform a Superior or Inferior that an address previously supplied  
1919 for the peer (i.e. an Inferior or Superior, respectively) is no longer appropriate, and to supply a  
1920 new address or set of addresses to replace the old one.

1921 A Redirector may send a REDIRECT message in response to receiving a message using the old  
1922 address, or may send REDIRECT at its own initiative.

1923 If a Superior moves from the superior-address in its CONTEXT, or an Inferior moves from the  
1924 inferior-address in the ENROL message, the implementation **must** ensure that a Redirector  
1925 catches any inbound messages using the old address and replies with a REDIRECT message  
1926 giving the new address. (Note that the inbound message may itself be a REDIRECT message, in

1927 which case the Redirector shall use the new address in the received message as the target for the  
1928 REDIRECT that it sends.)

1929 After receiving a REDIRECT message, the BTP actor **must** use the new address not the old one,  
1930 unless failure prevents it updating its information.

| Redirector receives                  | Redirector sends |
|--------------------------------------|------------------|
| Any message for Superior or Inferior | REDIRECT         |

### 1931 **Status Requestor**

1932 Requests and receives the current status of a transaction tree node – any of an Inferior, Superior  
1933 or Decider, or the current status of the nodes relationships with its Inferiors, if any. The role of  
1934 Status Requestor has no responsibilities – it is just a name for where the REQUEST\_STATUS  
1935 and REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES comes from (REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES is  
1936 also issued by a Terminator to a Decider).

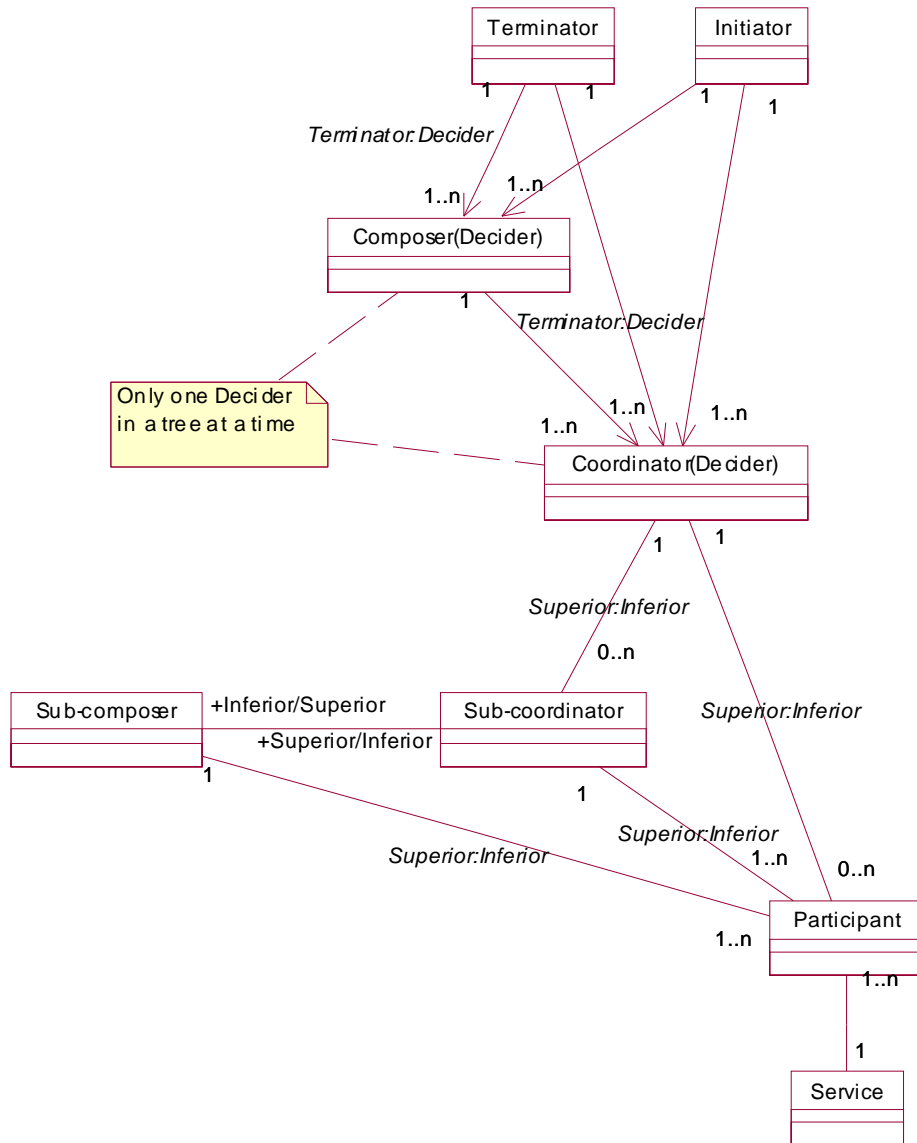
| Status Requestor sends  | Status Requestor receives |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| REQUEST_STATUS          | STATUS                    |
| REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUS | INFERIOR_STATUSES         |

1937

1938 The receiver of the request can refuse to provide the status information by replying with  
1939 FAULT(StatusRefused). The information returned in STATUS will always relate to the  
1940 transaction tree node as a whole (e.g. as an Inferior, even if it is also a Superior).

1941 **Summary of relationships**

1942 Figure 20 summarises the relationships between the BTP roles. BTP can be implemented using  
 1943 proprietary equivalents of the Terminator and Decider roles.



1944

1945

**Figure 20 Summary of relationships between roles**

## 1946 **Abstract Messages and Associated Contracts**

1947 BT Protocol Messages are defined in this section in terms of the abstract information that has to  
1948 be communicated. These abstract messages will be mapped to concrete messages communicated  
1949 by a particular carrier protocol (there can be several such mappings defined).

1950 The abstract message set and the associated state table assume the carrier protocol will

- 1951 • deliver messages completely and correctly, or not at all (corrupted messages will not be  
1952 delivered);
- 1953 • report some communication failures, but will not necessarily report all (i.e. not all  
1954 message deliveries are positively acknowledged within the carrier);
- 1955 • sometimes deliver successive messages in a different order than they were sent; and
- 1956 • does not have built-in mechanisms to link a request and a response

1957 Note that these assumptions would be met by a mapping to SMTP and more than met by  
1958 mappings to SOAP/HTTP.

1959 However, when the abstract message set is mapped to a carrier protocol that provides a richer  
1960 service (e.g. reports all delivery failures, guarantees ordered delivery or offers a request/response  
1961 mechanism), the mapping can take advantage of these features. Typically in such cases, some of  
1962 the parameters of an abstract message will be implicit in the carrier mechanisms, while the values  
1963 of other parameters will be directly represented in transmitted elements.

1964 The abstract messages include **Delivery parameters** that are concerned with the transmission and  
1965 delivery of the messages as well as **Payload parameters** directly concerned with the progression  
1966 of the BTP relationships. When bound to a particular carrier protocol and for particular  
1967 implementation configurations, parts or all of the Delivery parameters may be implicit in the  
1968 carrier protocol and will not appear in the "on-the-wire" representation of the BTP messages as  
1969 such. Delivery parameters are defined as being only those parameters that are concerned with the  
1970 transmission of this message, or of an immediate reply (thus address parameters to be used in  
1971 repeated later messages and the identifiers of both sender and receiver are Payload parameters). In  
1972 the tables in this section, Delivery parameters are shown in shaded cells.

## 1973 **Addresses**

1974 All of the messages except CONTEXT have a "target address" parameter and many also have  
1975 other address parameters. These latter identify the desired target of other messages in the set. In  
1976 all cases, the exact value will have been originally determined by the implementation that is the  
1977 target or intended target.

1978 The detailed format of the address will depend on the particular carrier protocol, but at this  
1979 abstract level is considered to have three parts. The first part, the "binding name", identifies the  
1980 binding to a particular carrier protocol – some bindings are specified in this document, others can  
1981 be specified elsewhere. The second part of the address, the "binding address", is meaningful to  
1982 the carrier protocol itself, which will use it for the communication (i.e. it will permit a message to

1983 be delivered to a receiver). The third part, “additional information”, is not used or understood by  
1984 the carrier protocol. The “additional information” may be a structured value.

1985 When a message is actually transmitted, the “binding name” of the target address will identify  
1986 which carrier protocol is in use and the “binding address” will identify the destination, as known  
1987 to the carrier protocol. The entire binding address is considered to be “consumed” by the carrier  
1988 protocol implementation. All of it may be used by the sending implementation, or some of it may  
1989 be transmitted in headers, or as part of a URL in the carrier protocol, but then used or consumed  
1990 by the receiving implementation of the carrier protocol to direct the BTP message to a BTP-aware  
1991 entity (BTP-aware in that it is capable of interpreting the BTP messages). The “additional  
1992 information” of the target address will be part of the BTP message itself and used in some way by  
1993 the receiving BTP-aware entity (it could be used to route the message on to some other BTP  
1994 entity). Thus, for the target address, only the “additional information” field is transmitted in the  
1995 BTP message and the “additional information” is opaque to parties other than the recipient.

1996 For other addresses in BTP messages, all three components will be within the message.

1997 All messages that concern a particular Superior:Inferior relationship have an identifier parameter  
1998 for the target side as well as the target address. This allows full flexibility for implementation  
1999 choices – an implementation can:

2000 a) Use the same binding address and additional information for multiple business  
2001 transactions, using the identifier parameter to locate the relevant state  
2002 information;

2003 b) Use the same binding address for multiple business transactions and use the  
2004 additional information to locate the information; or

2005 c) Use a different binding address for each business transaction.

2006 Which of these choices is used is opaque to the entity sending the message – both parts of the  
2007 address and the identifier originated at the recipient of this message (and were transmitted as  
2008 parameters of earlier messages in the opposite direction).

2009 BTP recovery requires that the state information for a Superior or Inferior is accessible after  
2010 failure and that the peer can distinguish between temporary inaccessibility and the permanent  
2011 non-existence of the state information. As is explained in “Redirection” [Below in the conceptual](#)  
2012 [model](#), BTP provides mechanisms – having a set of BTP addresses for some parameters, and the  
2013 REDIRECT message – that make this possible, even if the recovered state information is on a  
2014 different address to the original one (as may be the case if case c) above is used).

## 2015 **Request/response pairs**

2016 Many of the messages combine in pairs as a request and its response. However, in some cases the  
2017 response message is sent without a triggering request, or as a possible response to more than one  
2018 type of request. To allow for this, the abstract message set treats each message as standalone; but  
2019 where a request does expect a reply, a “reply-address” parameter will be present. For any  
2020 message with a reply address parameter, in the case of certain errors, a FAULT message will be  
2021 sent to the reply address instead of the expected reply.

2022 Between Superior and Inferior the address of the peer is normally known (from the “superior-  
2023 address” on an earlier CONTEXT or the “inferior-address” on a received ENROL). However, in  
2024 some cases a message will be received for a Superior or Inferior that is not known – the state  
2025 information no longer exists. This is not an exceptional condition but occurs when one side has  
2026 either not created or has removed its persistent state in accordance with the procedures, but a  
2027 message has got lost in a failure, and the peer still has state information. The response to a  
2028 message for an unknown (and logically non-existent) Superior is SUPERIOR\_STATE/unknown,  
2029 for an unknown Inferior it is INFERIOR\_STATE/unknown. However, since the intended target is  
2030 unknown, there is no information to locate the peer, which sent the undeliverable message. To  
2031 enable the receiver to reply with the appropriate \*\_STATE/unknown, all the messages between  
2032 Superior and Inferior have a “senders-address” parameter. If a FAULT message is to be sent in  
2033 response to message which (as an abstract message) has a “senders-address” parameter, the  
2034 FAULT message is sent to that address.

2035 *Note – Both reply-address and senders-address may be absent when the carrier protocol*  
2036 *itself has a request/response pattern. In these cases, the reply or sender address is*  
2037 *implicitly that of the sender of the request (and thus the destination of a response)*

### 2038 **Compounding messages**

2039 BTP messages may be sent in combination with each other, or with other (application) messages.  
2040 There are two cases:

- 2041 a) Sending the messages together where the combination has semantic  
2042 significance. One message is said to be “related to” the other – the combination  
2043 is termed a “group”.
- 2044 b) Sending of the messages where the combination has no semantic significance,  
2045 but is merely a convenience or optimisation. This is termed “bundling” – the  
2046 combination is termed a “bundle”.

2047 The form A&B is used to refer to a combination (group) where message B is sent in relation to A  
2048 (“relation” is asymmetric). The form A+B is used to refer to A and B bundled together- the  
2049 transmission of the bundle "A+B" is semantically identical to the transmission of A followed by  
2050 the transmission of B.

2051 Only certain combinations of messages are possible in a group, and the meaning of the relation is  
2052 specifically defined for each such combination in the next section. A particular group is treated as  
2053 a unit for transmission – it has a single target address. This is usually that of one of the messages  
2054 in the group – the specification for the group defines which.

2055 A “bundle” of messages may contain both unrelated messages and groups of related messages.  
2056 The only constraint on which messages and groups can be bundled is that all have the same  
2057 binding address, but may have different “additional information” values. (Messages within a  
2058 related group may have different addresses, where the rules of their relatedness permit this).  
2059 Unless constrained by the binding, any messages or groups that are to be sent to the same binding  
2060 address may be bundled – the fact that the binding addresses are the same is a necessary and  
2061 sufficient condition for the sender to determine that the messages can be bundled.

2062 A particular and important case of related messages is where a BTP CONTEXT message is sent  
2063 related to an application message. In this case, the target of the application message defines the  
2064 destination of the CONTEXT message. The receiving implementation may in fact remove the  
2065 CONTEXT before delivering the application message to the application (Service) proper, but  
2066 from the perspective of the sender, the two are sent to the same place.

2067 The compounding mechanisms, and the multi-part address structures, support the “one-wire” and  
2068 “one-shot” communication patterns.

2069 In “one-wire”, all message exchanges between two sides of a Superior:Inferior relationship,  
2070 including the associated application messages, pass via the same “endpoints”. These “endpoints”  
2071 may in fact be relays, routing messages on to particular actors within their domain. The onward  
2072 routing will require some further addressing, but this has to be opaque to the sender. This can be  
2073 achieved if the relaying endpoint ensures that all addresses for actors in its domain have the  
2074 relay’s address as their binding address, and any routing information it will need in its own  
2075 domain is placed in the additional information. (This may involve the relay changing addresses in  
2076 messages as they pass through it on the way out). On receiving a message, it determines the  
2077 within-domain destination from the received additional information (which is thus rewritten) and  
2078 forwards the message appropriately. The sender is unaware of this, and merely sees addresses  
2079 with the same binding address, which it is permitted to bundle. The content of the “additional  
2080 information” is a matter only for the relay – it could put an entire BTP address in there, or other  
2081 implementation-defined information. Note that a quite different one-wire implementation can be  
2082 constructed where there is no relaying, but the receiving entity effectively performs all roles,  
2083 using the received identifiers to locate the appropriate state.

2084 “One-shot” communication makes it possible to send an application message, receive the  
2085 application reply, enrol an Inferior to be responsible for the confirm/cancel of the operations of  
2086 those message and inform the Superior that the Inferior is prepared, all in one two-way exchange  
2087 across the network (e.g. one request/reply of a carrier protocol).. The application request is sent  
2088 with a related CONTEXT message. The application response is sent with a relation group of  
2089 CONTEXT\_REPLY/related, ENROL/no-rsp-req message and a PREPARED message. This is  
2090 possible even if the Superior address is different from the address of the application element that  
2091 sends the original message (if the application exchange is request/reply, there may not even be an  
2092 identifiable address for the application element). The target addresses of the ENROL and  
2093 PREPARED (the Superior address) are not transmitted; the actor that was originally responsible  
2094 for adding the CONTEXT to the outbound application message remembers the Superior address  
2095 and forwards the ENROL and PREPARED appropriately.

2096 With “one-shot”, if there are multiple Inferiors created as a result of a single application message,  
2097 there is an ENROL and PREPARED message for each sent related to the CONTEXT\_REPLY. If  
2098 an operation fails, a CANCELLED message is sent instead of a PREPARED.

2099 If the CONTEXT has “superior-type” of “atom”, then subsequent messages to the same Service,  
2100 with the same related CONTEXT/atom, can have their associated operations put under the control  
2101 of the same Inferior, and only a CONTEXT\_REPLY/completed is sent back with the response (if  
2102 the new operations fail, it will be necessary to send back CONTEXT\_REPLY/repudiated, or send  
2103 CANCELLED). If the “superior type” on the CONTEXT is “cohesive”, each operation will  
2104 require separate enrolment.



2105 Whether the “one-shot” mechanism is used is determined by the implementation on the  
2106 responding (Inferior) side. This may be subject to configuration and may also be constrained by  
2107 the application or by the binding in use.

## 2108 **Extensibility**

2109 To simplify interoperation between implementations of this edition of BTP with implementations  
2110 of future editions, the “must-be-understood” sub-parameter as specified for Qualifiers may be  
2111 defined for use with any parameter added to an existing message in a future revision of this  
2112 specification. The default for “must-be-understood” shall be “true”, so an implementation  
2113 receiving an unrecognised parameter without a “false” value for “must-be-understood” shall not  
2114 accept it (the FAULT value “UnrecognisedParameter” is available, but other errors, including  
2115 lower-layer parsing/unmarshalling errors may be reported instead). If “must-be-understood” with  
2116 the value “false” is present as a sub-parameter of a parameter in any message, a receiving  
2117 implementation **should** ignore the parameter.

2118 How the sub-parameter is associated with the new parameter is determined by the particular  
2119 binding.

2120 No special mechanism is provided to allow for the introduction of completely new messages.

## 2121 **Messages**

### 2122 **Qualifiers**

2123 All messages have a Qualifiers parameter which contains zero or more Qualifier values. A  
2124 Qualifier has sub-parameters:

| <b>Sub-parameter</b> | <b>Type</b>                 |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| qualifier name       | string                      |
| qualifier group      | URI                         |
| must-be-understood   | Boolean                     |
| to-be-propagated     | Boolean                     |
| content              | Arbitrary – depends on type |

2125

2126 **Qualifier group** ensures the Qualifier name is unambiguous. Qualifiers in the same group  
2127 need not have any functional relationship. The qualifier group will typically be used to  
2128 identify the specification that defines the qualifier’s meaning and use. Qualifiers may  
2129 be defined in this or other standard specifications, in specifications of a particular  
2130 community of users or of implementations or by bilateral agreement.

2131 **Qualifier name** this identifies the meaning and use of the Qualifier, using a name that is  
2132 unambiguous within the scope of the Qualifier group.

2133 **Must-be-understood** if this has the value “true” and the receiving entity does not  
2134 recognise the Qualifier type (or does not implement the necessary functionality), a  
2135 FAULT “UnsupportedQualifier” shall be returned and the message shall not be  
2136 processed. Default is “true”.

2137 **To-be-propagated** if this has the value “true” and the receiving entity passes the BTP  
2138 message (which may be a CONTEXT, but can be other messages) onwards to other  
2139 entities, the same Qualifier value shall be included. If the value is “false”, the Qualifier  
2140 shall not be automatically included if the BTP message is passed onwards. (If the  
2141 receiving entity does support the qualifier type, it is possible a propagated message  
2142 may contain another instance of the same type, even with the same Content – this is  
2143 not considered propagation of the original qualifier.). Default is “false”.

2144 **Content** the type (which may be structured) and meaning of the content is defined by the  
2145 specification of the Qualifier.

#### 2146 **Messages not restricted to outcome or control relationships.**

2147 The messages in this section are used between various roles. CONTEXT message is used in the  
2148 Initiator:Factory relationship (when it is related to BEGIN or to BEGUN), and related to an  
2149 application ‘message’ to propagate the business transaction between parts of the  
2150 application. CONTEXT\_REPLY is used as the reply to a CONTEXT.REQUEST\_STATUS can  
2151 be issued to, and STATUS returned by any of Decider, Superior or Inferior. FAULT can be used  
2152 on any relationship to indicate an error condition back to the sender of a message.

#### 2153 **CONTEXT**

2154 A CONTEXT is supplied by (or on behalf of) a Superior and related to one or more application  
2155 messages. (The means by which this relationship is represented is determined by the binding and  
2156 the binding mechanisms of the application protocol.) The “superior-type” parameter identifies  
2157 whether the Superior will apply the same decision to all Inferiors enrolled using the same superior  
2158 identifier (“superior-type” is “atom”) or whether it may apply different decisions (“superior-type”  
2159 is “cohesion”).

| Parameter           | Type                 |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| superior-address    | Set of BTP addresses |
| superior-identifier | Identifier           |
| superior-type       | cohesion/atom        |
| qualifiers          | List of qualifiers   |
| reply-address       | BTP address          |

2160

2161 **superior-address** the address to which ENROL and other messages from an enrolled  
2162 Inferior are to be sent. This can be a set of alternative addresses.

2163 **superior-identifier** identifies the Superior. This shall be globally unambiguous.

2164 **superior-type** identifies whether the CONTEXT refers to a Cohesion or an Atom. Default  
2165 is atom.

2166 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers. The standard qualifier “Transaction timelimit”  
2167 is carried by CONTEXT.

2168 **reply-address** the address to which a replying CONTEXT\_REPLY is to be sent. This may  
2169 be different each time the CONTEXT is transmitted – it refers to the destination of a  
2170 replying CONTEXT\_REPLY for this particular transmission of the CONTEXT.

2171 There is no “target-address” parameter for CONTEXT as it is only transmitted in relation to the  
2172 application messages, BEGIN and BEGUN.

2173 The forms CONTEXT/cohesion and CONTEXT/atom refer to CONTEXT messages with the  
2174 “superior-type” with the appropriate value.

## 2175 CONTEXT\_REPLY

2176 CONTEXT\_REPLY is sent after receipt of CONTEXT (related to application message(s)) to  
2177 indicate whether all necessary enrolments have already completed (ENROLLED has been  
2178 received) or will be completed by ENROL messages sent in relation to the CONTEXT\_REPLY  
2179 or if an enrolment attempt has failed. CONTEXT\_REPLY may be sent related to an application  
2180 message (typically the response to the application message related to the CONTEXT). In some  
2181 bindings the CONTEXT\_REPLY may be implicit in the application message.  
2182 CONTEXT\_REPLY is used in some of the related groups to allow BTP messages to be sent to a  
2183 Superior with an application message.

| Parameter           | Type  |
|---------------------|---|
| superior-identifier | Identifier  |
| completion-status   | completed/ <a href="#">incomplete</a> /related/repudiated |
| qualifiers          | List of qualifiers  |
| target-address      | BTP address   |

2184

2185 **superior-identifier** the “superior-identifier” from the CONTEXT

2186 **completion-status:** reports whether all enrol operations made necessary by the receipt of  
2187 the earlier CONTEXT message have completed. Values are

| Value             | meaning   |
|-------------------|---|
| <i>completed</i>  | All enrolments (if any) have succeeded already  |
| <i>incomplete</i> | Further enrolments are possible (used only in related groups with other BTP messages) |
| <i>related</i>    | At least some enrolments are to be  |

| Value             | meaning   |
|-------------------|---|
|                   | performed by ENROL messages related to the CONTEXT_REPLY. All other enrolments (if any) have succeeded already. |
| <i>repudiated</i> | At least one enrolment has failed. The implications of receiving the CONTEXT have <b>not</b> been honoured.     |

2188

2189       **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2190       **target-address** the address to which the CONTEXT\_REPLY is sent. This shall be the  
2191       “reply-address” from the CONTEXT.

2192       The form CONTEXT\_REPLY/completed, CONTEXT\_REPLY/related and  
2193       CONTEXT\_REPLY/repudiated refer to CONTEXT\_REPLY messages with status having the  
2194       appropriate value. The form CONTEXT\_REPLY/ok refers to either of  
2195       CONTEXT\_REPLY/completed or CONTEXT\_REPLY/related.

2196       If there are no necessary enrolments (e.g. the application messages related to the received  
2197       CONTEXT did not require the enrolment of any Inferiors), then CONTEXT\_REPLY/completed  
2198       is used.

2199       If a CONTEXT\_REPLY/repudiated is received, the receiving implementation **must** ensure that  
2200       the business transaction will not be confirmed.

## 2201       REQUEST\_STATUS

2202       Sent to an Inferior, Superior or to a Decider to ask it to reply with STATUS. The receiver may  
2203       reject the request with a FAULT(StatusRefused).

| Parameter         | Type               |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| target-identifier | Identifier         |
| qualifiers        | List of qualifiers |
| target-address    | BTP address        |
| reply-address     | BTP address        |

2204

2205       **target identifier** The identifier for the business transaction, or part of business transaction  
2206       whose status is sought. If the target-address is a “decider-address”, this parameter shall  
2207       be the “transaction-identifier” on the BEGUN message. If the “target-address” is an  
2208       “inferior-address”, this parameter shall be the “inferior-identifier” on the ENROL  
2209       message. If the “target-address” is a “superior-address”, this parameter shall be the  
2210       “superior-identifier” on the CONTEXT.

2211 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2212 **target-address** the address to which the REQUEST\_STATUS message is sent. This can  
 2213 be any of “decider-address”, “inferior-address” or “superior-address”.

2214 **reply-address** the address to which the replying STATUS should be sent.

2215 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “reply-address”)

2216 **General**

2217 **Redirect** – if the intended target now has a different address

2218 **StatusRefused** – if the receiver is not prepared to report its status to the sender of this  
 2219 message

2220 **UnknownTransaction** – if the target-identifier is unknown

2221 **STATUS**

2222 Sent by a Inferior, Superior or Decider in reply to a REQUEST\_STATUS, reporting the overall  
 2223 state of the transaction tree node represented by the sender.

| Parameter             | Type               |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| responders-identifier | Identifier         |
| status                | See below          |
| qualifiers            | List of qualifiers |
| target-address        | BTP address        |

2224

2225 **responders-identifier** the identifier of the state, identical to the “target-identifier” on the  
 2226 REQUEST\_STATUS.

2227 **status** states the current status of the transaction tree node represented by the sender.  
 2228 Some of the values are only issued if the sender is an Inferior. If the transaction tree  
 2229 node is both Superior and Inferior (i.e. is a sub-coordinator or sub-composer), and two  
 2230 status values would be valid for the current state, it is the sender’s option which one is  
 2231 used.

| status value     | Meaning from Superior | Meaning from Inferior   |
|------------------|-----------------------|---|
| <i>Created</i>   | Not applicable        | The Inferior exists (and is addressable) but it has not been enrolled with a Superior |
| <i>Enrolling</i> | Not applicable        | ENROL has been sent, but ENROLLED is awaited  |

| <b>status value</b>           | <b>Meaning from Superior</b>  | <b>Meaning from Inferior</b>  |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| <i>Active</i>                 | New enrolment of inferiors is possible  | The Inferior is enrolled  |
| <i>Resigning</i>              | Not applicable  | RESIGN has been sent; RESIGNED is awaited   |
| <i>Resigned</i>               | Not applicable  | RESIGNED has been received  |
| <i>Preparing</i>              | Not applicable  | PREPARE has been received; PREPARED has not been sent   |
| <i>Prepared</i>               | Not applicable  | PREPARED has been sent; no outcome has been received or autonomous decision made                                  |
| <i>Confirming</i>             | Confirm decision has been made or CONFIRM has been received as Inferior but responses from inferiors are pending  | CONFIRM has been received; CONFIRMED/response has not been sent   |
| <i>Confirmed</i>              | CONFIRMED/responses have been received from all Inferiors   | CONFIRMED/response has been sent  |
| <i>Cancelling</i>             | Cancel decision has been made but responses from inferiors are pending  | CANCEL has been received or auto-cancel has been decided  |
| <i>Cancelled</i>              | CANCELLED has been received from all Inferiors  | CANCELLED has been sent   |
| <i>€Cancel-contradiction</i>  | Not applicable  | Autonomous cancel decision was made, CONFIRM received; CONTRADICTION has not been received                        |
| <i>€Confirm-contradiction</i> | Not applicable  | Autonomous confirm decision was made, CANCEL received; CONTRADICTION has not been received                        |
| <i>Hazard</i>                 | A hazard has been reported from at least one Inferior   | A hazard has been discovered; CONTRADICTION has not been received   |
| <i>Contradicted</i>           | Not applicable  | CONTRADICTION has been received   |
| <i>Unknown</i>                | No state information for the target-identifier exists   | No state information for the target-identifier exists   |
| <i>Inaccessible</i>           | There may be state information for this target-identifier but it cannot be reached/existence cannot be determined | There may be state information for this target-identifier but it cannot be reached/existence cannot be determined |

2233 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2234 **target-address** the address to which the STATUS is sent. This will be the “reply-address”  
 2235 on the REQUEST\_STATUS message

2236 Types of FAULT possible

2237 **General**

2238 **FAULT**

2239 Sent in reply to various messages to report an error condition . The FAULT message is used on  
 2240 all the relationships as a general negative reply to a message.

| Parameter           | Type               |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| superior-identifier | Identifier         |
| inferior-identifier | Identifier         |
| fault-type          | See below          |
| fault-data          | See below          |
| fault-text          | Text string        |
| qualifiers          | List of qualifiers |
| target-address      | BTP address        |

2241

2242 **superior-identifier** the “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message and as used on  
 2243 the ENROL message (present only if the FAULT is sent to the superior).

2244 **inferior-identifier** the “inferior-identifier” as on the ENROL message (present only if the  
 2245 FAULT is sent to the inferior)

2246 **fault-type** identifies the nature of the error, as specified for each of the main messages.

2247 **fault-data** information relevant to the particular error. Each “fault-type” defines the  
 2248 content of the “fault-data”:

| <b>fault-type</b>           | <b>meaning</b>   | <b>fault-data</b>   |
|-----------------------------|--|---|
| <i>CommunicationFailure</i> | Any fault arising from the carrier mechanism and communication infrastructure.   | Determined by the carrier mechanism and binding specification                           |
| <i>DuplicateInferior</i>    | An inferior with the same address and identifier is already enrolled with this Superior  | The identifier  |
| <i>General</i>              | Any otherwise unspecified problem  | None  |
| <i>InvalidDecider</i>       | The address the message was sent to is not valid (at all or for this Terminator and transaction identifier)  | The address   |
| <i>InvalidInferior</i>      | The "inferior-identifier" in the message or at least one "inferior-identifier"s in an "inferior-list" parameter is not known or does not identify a known Inferior | One or more invalid identifiers   |
| <i>InvalidSuperior</i>      | The received identifier is not known or does not identify a known Superior   | The identifier  |
| <i>StatusRefused</i>        | The receiver will not report the requested status (or inferior statuses) to this StatusRequestor   | None  |
| <i>InvalidTerminator</i>    | The address the message was sent to is not valid (at all or for this Decider and transaction identifier)   | The address   |
| <i>UnknownParameter</i>     | A BTP message has been received with an unrecognised parameter   | None  |
| <i>UnknownTransaction</i>   | The transaction-identifier is unknown  | The transaction-identifier  |
| <i>UnsupportedQualifier</i> | A qualifier has been received that is not recognised and on which "must-be-Understood" is "true".  | Qualifier group and name  |
| <i>WrongState</i>           | The message has arrived when the recipient or the transaction identified by a related CONTEXT is in an invalid state.  | None  |
| <i>Redirect</i>             | The target of the BTP message now has a different address  | Set of BTP addresses, to be used instead of the address the BTP message was received on |

2249

2250 **fault-text** Free text describing the fault or providing more information. Whether this  
2251 parameter is present, and exactly what it contains are an implementation option.

2252 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.



2253 **target-address** the address to which the FAULT is sent. This may be the “reply-address”  
2254 from a received message or the address of the opposite side (superior/inferior) as given  
2255 in a CONTEXT or ENROL message

2256 *Note – If the carrier mechanism used for the transmission of BTP messages is capable of*  
2257 *delivering messages in a different order than they were sent in, the “WrongState”*  
2258 *FAULT is not sent and should be ignored if received.*

## 2259 **REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES, INFERIOR\_STATUSES**

2260 REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES may be sent to and INFERIOR\_STATUSES sent from any  
2261 Decider, Superior or Inferior, asking it to report on the status of its relationships with Inferiors (if  
2262 any). Since Deciders are required to respond to REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES with  
2263 INFERIOR\_STATUSES but non-Deciders may just issue FAULT(StatusRefused), and  
2264 INFERIOR\_STATUSES is also used as a reply to other messages from Terminator to Decider,  
2265 these messages are described below under the messages used in the control relationships.

### 2266 **Messages used in the outcome relationships**

#### 2267 **ENROL**

2268 A request to a Superior to ENROL an Inferior. This is typically issued after receipt of a  
2269 CONTEXT message in relation to an application request.

2270 The actor issuing ENROL plays the role of Enroller.

| Parameter           | type                 |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| superior-identifier | Identifier           |
| response-requested  | Boolean              |
| inferior-address    | Set of BTP addresses |
| inferior-identifier | Identifier           |
| qualifiers          | List of qualifiers   |
| target-address      | BTP address          |
| reply-address       | BTP address          |

2271

2272 **superior-identifier.** The “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message

2273 **response- requested** true if an ENROLLED response is required, false otherwise. Default  
2274 is false.

2275 **inferior-address** the address to which PREPARE, CONFIRM, CANCEL and  
2276 SUPERIOR\_STATE messages for this Inferior are to be sent.

2277 **inferior-identifier** an identifier that identifies this Inferior. This shall be globally  
2278 unambiguous..

2279 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers. The standard qualifier “Inferior name” may be  
2280 present.

2281 **target-address** the address to which the ENROL is sent. This will be the “superior-  
2282 address” from the CONTEXT message.

2283 **reply-address** the address to which a replying ENROLLED is to be sent, if “response-  
2284 requested” is true. If this field is absent and “response-requested” is true, the  
2285 ENROLLED should be sent to the “inferior-address” (or one of them, at sender’s  
2286 option)

2287 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “reply-address”)

2288 **General**

2289 **InvalidSuperior** – if “superior-identifier” is unknown

2290 **Redirect** – if the Superior now has a different superior-address

2291 **DuplicateInferior** – if inferior with at least one of the set “inferior-address” the same and  
2292 the same “inferior-identifier” is already enrolled

2293 **WrongState** – if it is too late to enrol new Inferiors (generally if the Superior has already  
2294 sent a PREPARED message to its superior or terminator, or if it has already issued  
2295 CONFIRM to other Inferiors).

2296 The form ENROL/rsp-req refers to an ENROL message with “response-requested” having the  
2297 value “true”; ENROL/no-rsp-req refers to an ENROL message with “response-requested” having  
2298 the value “false”

2299 ENROL/no-rsp-req is typically sent in relation to CONTEXT\_REPLY/related. ENROL/rsp-req is  
2300 typically when CONTEXT\_REPLY/completed will be used (after the ENROLLED message has  
2301 been received.)

2302 **ENROLLED**

2303 Sent from Superior in reply to an ENROL/rsp-req message, to indicate the Inferior has been  
2304 successfully enrolled (and will therefore be included in the termination exchanges)

| Parameter           | Type               |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| inferior-identifier | Identifier         |
| qualifiers          | List of qualifiers |
| target-address      | BTP address        |
| sender-address      | BTP address        |

2305

2306 **inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

2307       **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2308       **target-address** the address to which the ENROLLED is sent. This will be the “reply-  
 2309           address” from the ENROL message (or one of the “inferior-address”s if the “reply-  
 2310           address” was empty)

2311       **sender-address** the address from which the ENROLLED is sent. This is an address of the  
 2312           Superior.

2313       No FAULT messages are issued on receiving ENROLLED.

2314       **RESIGN**

2315       Sent from an enrolled Inferior to the Superior to remove the Inferior from the enrolment. This can  
 2316       only be sent if the operations of the business transaction have had no effect as perceived by the  
 2317       Inferior.

2318       RESIGN may be sent at any time prior to the sending of a PREPARED or CANCELLED  
 2319       message (which cannot then be sent). RESIGN may be sent in response to a PREPARE message.

| Parameter           | type               |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| superior-identifier | identifier         |
| inferior-identifier | identifier         |
| response-requested  | Boolean            |
| qualifiers          | List of qualifiers |
| target-address      | BTP address        |
| sender-address      | BTP address        |

2320

2321       **superior-identifier** The “superior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

2322       **inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message

2323       **response-requested** is set to “true” if a RESIGNED response is required. Default is  
 2324       “false”.

2325       **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2326       **target-address** the address to which the RESIGN is sent. This will be the superior address  
 2327       as used on the ENROL message.

2328       **sender-address** the address from which the RESIGN is sent. This is an address of the  
 2329       Inferior.

2330       *Note -- RESIGN is equivalent to readonly vote in some other protocols, but can be issued*  
 2331       *early.*

- 2332 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)
- 2333        **General**
- 2334        **InvalidSuperior** – if “superior-identifier” is unknown
- 2335        **InvalidInferior** – if no ENROL had been received for this “inferior-identifier”inferior-
- 2336        **WrongState** – if a PREPARED or CANCELLED has already been received by the  
2337            Superior from this Inferior
- 2338 The form RESIGN/rsp-req refers to an RESIGN message with “response-requested” having the  
2339 value “true”; RESIGN /no-rsp-req refers to an RESIGN message with “response-requested”  
2340 having the value “false”

2341 **RESIGNED**

2342 Sent in reply to a RESIGN/rsp-req message.

| Parameter           | Type               |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| inferior-identifier | Identifier         |
| qualifiers          | List of qualifiers |
| target-address      | BTP address        |
| sender-address      | BTP address        |

- 2343
- 2344        **inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message for this  
2345            Inferior.
- 2346        **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.
- 2347        **target-address** the address to which the RESIGNED is sent. This will be the “inferior-  
2348            address” from the ENROL message.
- 2349        **sender-address** the address from which the RESIGNED is sent. This is an address of the  
2350            Superior.
- 2351 After receiving this message the Inferior will not receive any more messages with this “inferior-  
2352 identifier”.
- 2353 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)
- 2354        **General**
- 2355        **WrongState** - if RESIGN has not been sent

2356 **PREPARE**

2357 Sent from Superior to an Inferior from whom ENROL but neither CANCELLED nor RESIGN  
2358 have been received, requesting a PREPARED message. PREPARE can be sent after receiving a  
2359 PREPARED message.

| Parameter           | Type               |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| inferior-identifier | Identifier         |
| qualifiers          | List of qualifiers |
| target-address      | BTP address        |
| sender-address      | BTP address        |

2360

2361 **inferior-identifier** the “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message.

2362 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers. The standard qualifier “Minimum inferior  
2363 timeout” is carried by PREPARE.

2364 **target-address** the address to which the PREPARE message is sent. This will be the  
2365 “inferior-address” from the ENROL message.

2366 **sender-address** the address from which the PREPARE is sent. This is an address of the  
2367 Superior.

2368 On receiving PREPARE, an Inferior **should** reply with a PREPARED, CANCELLED or  
2369 RESIGN.

2370 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

2371 **General**

2372 **InvalidInferior** – if “inferior-identifier” is unknown

2373 **WrongState** – if a CONFIRM or CANCEL has already been received by this Inferior.

2374 **PREPARED**

2375 Sent from Inferior to Superior, either unsolicited or in response to PREPARE, but only when the  
2376 Inferior has determined the operations associated with the Inferior can be confirmed and can be  
2377 cancelled, as may be instructed by the Superior. The level of isolation is a local matter (i.e. it is  
2378 the Inferiors choice, as constrained by the shared understanding of the application exchanges) –  
2379 other access may be blocked, may see applied results of operations or may see the original state.

| Parameter           | Type       |
|---------------------|------------|
| superior-identifier | Identifier |

| Parameter           | Type               |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| inferior-identifier | Identifier         |
| default-is cancel   | Boolean            |
| qualifiers          | List of qualifiers |
| target-address      | BTP address        |
| sender-address      | BTP address        |

2380

2381 **superior-identifier** the “superior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

2382 **inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

2383 **default-is cancel** if “true”, the Inferior states that if the outcome at the Superior is to  
 2384 cancel the operations associated with this Inferior, no further messages need be sent to  
 2385 the Inferior. If the Inferior does not receive a CONFIRM message, it will cancel the  
 2386 associated operations. The value “true” will invariably be used with a qualifier  
 2387 indicating under what circumstances (usually a timeout) an autonomous decision to  
 2388 cancel will be made. If “false”, the Inferior will expect a CONFIRM or CANCEL  
 2389 message as appropriate, even if qualifiers indicate that an autonomous decision will be  
 2390 made.

2391 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers. The standard qualifier “Inferior timeout” may  
 2392 be carried by PREPARED.

2393 **target-address** the address to which the PREPARED is sent. This will be the Superior  
 2394 address as on the ENROL message.

2395 **sender-address** the address from which the PREPARED is sent. This is an address of the  
 2396 Inferior.

2397 On sending a PREPARED, the Inferior undertakes to maintain its ability to confirm or cancel the  
 2398 effects of the associated operations until it receives a CONFIRM or CANCEL message.  
 2399 Qualifiers may define a time limit or other constraints on this promise. The “default-is cancel”  
 2400 parameter affects only the subsequent message exchanges and does not of itself state that  
 2401 cancellation will occur.

2402 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

2403 *General*

2404 *InvalidSuperior* – if “superior-identifier” is unknown

2405 *InvalidInferior* – if no ENROL has been received for this “inferior-identifier”, or if  
 2406 RESIGN has been received from this Inferior

2407 The form PREPARED/cancel refers to a PREPARED message with “default-is cancel” = “true”.  
2408 The unqualified form PREPARED refers to a PREPARED message with “default-is cancel” =  
2409 “false”.

## 2410 CONFIRM

2411 Sent by the Superior to an Inferior from whom PREPARED has been received.

| Parameter           | Type               |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| inferior-identifier | Identifier         |
| qualifiers          | List of qualifiers |
| target-address      | BTP address        |
| sender-address      | BTP address        |

2412

2413 **inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message for this  
2414 Inferior.

2415 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2416 **target-address** the address to which the CONFIRM message is sent. This will be the  
2417 “inferior-address” from the ENROL message.

2418 **sender-address** the address from which the CONFIRM is sent. This is an address of the  
2419 Superior.

2420 On receiving CONFIRM, the Inferior is released from its promise to be able to undo the  
2421 operations of associated with the Inferior. The effects of the operations can be made available to  
2422 everyone (if they weren’t already).

2423 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

2424 **General**

2425 **InvalidInferior** – if “inferior-identifier” is unknown

2426 **WrongState** – if no PREPARED has been sent by, or if CANCEL has been received by  
2427 this Inferior.

## 2428 CONFIRMED

2429 Sent after the Inferior has applied the confirmation, both in reply to CONFIRM or when the  
2430 Inferior has made an autonomous confirm decision, and in reply to a CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE if  
2431 the Inferior decides to confirm its associated operations.

| Parameter           | Type               |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| superior-identifier | Identifier         |
| inferior-identifier | Identifier         |
| confirm-received    | Boolean            |
| qualifiers          | List of qualifiers |
| target-address      | BTP address        |
| sender-address      | BTP address        |

2432

2433 **superior-identifier** the “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message.

2434 **inferior-identifier** the “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message.

2435 **confirm-received** “true” if CONFIRMED is sent after receiving a CONFIRM message;  
 2436 “false” if an autonomous confirm decision has been made and either if no CONFIRM  
 2437 message has been received or the implementation cannot determine if CONFIRM has  
 2438 been received (due to loss of state information in a failure).

2439 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2440 **target-address** the address to which the CONFIRMED is sent. This will be the Superior  
 2441 address as on the CONTEXT message.

2442 **sender-address** the address from which the CONFIRMED is sent. This is an address of  
 2443 the Inferior.

2444 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

2445 *General*

2446 *InvalidSuperior* – if “superior-identifier” is unknown

2447 *InvalidInferior* – if no ENROL has been received for this “inferior-identifier”, or if  
 2448 RESIGN has been received from this Inferior.

2449 *Note – A CONFIRMED message arriving before a CONFIRM message is sent, or after a*  
 2450 *CANCEL has been sent will occur when the Inferior has taken an autonomous*  
 2451 *decision and is not regarded as occurring in the wrong state. (The latter will cause a*  
 2452 *CONTRADICTION message to be sent.)*

2453 The form CONFIRMED/auto refers to a CONFIRMED message with “confirm-received” =  
 2454 “false”; CONFIRMED/response refers to a CONFIRMED message with “confirm-received” =  
 2455 “true”.

2456 **CANCEL**

2457 Sent by the Superior to an Inferior at any time before (and unless) CONFIRM has been sent.



| Parameter           | Type               |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| inferior-identifier | Identifier         |
| qualifiers          | List of qualifiers |
| target-address      | BTP address        |
| sender-address      | BTP address        |

2458

2459       **inferior-identifier** the “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message.

2460       **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2461       **target-address** the address to which the CANCEL message is sent. This will be the  
2462       “inferior-address” from the ENROL message.

2463       **sender-address** the address from which the CANCEL is sent. This is an address of the  
2464       Superior.

2465       When received by an Inferior, the effects of any operations associated with the Inferior should be  
2466       undone. If the Inferior had sent PREPARED, the Inferior is released from its promise to be able to  
2467       confirm the operations.

2468       Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

2469        *General*

2470        *InvalidInferior* – if “inferior-identifier” is unknown

2471        *WrongState* – if a CONFIRM has been received by this Inferior.

2472       **CANCELLED**

2473       Sent when the Inferior has applied (or is applying) cancellation of the operations associated with  
2474       the Inferior. CANCELLED is sent from Inferior to Superior in the following cases:

- 2475           1. before (and instead of) sending PREPARED, to indicate the Inferior is unable to  
2476           apply the operations in full and is cancelling all of them;
- 2477           2. in reply to CANCEL, regardless of whether PREPARED has been sent;
- 2478           3. after sending PREPARED and then making and applying an autonomous  
2479           decision to cancel.
- 2480           4. in reply to CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE if the Inferior decides to cancel the  
2481           associated operations

2482       As is specified in the state tables, cases 1, 2 and 3 are not always distinct in some circumstances  
2483       of recovery and resending of messages.

| Parameter           |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| superior-identifier | Identifier         |
| inferior-identifier | Identifier         |
| qualifiers          | List of qualifiers |
| target-address      | BTP address        |
| sender-address      | BTP address        |

2484

2485 **superior-identifier** the “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message.

2486 **inferior-identifier** the inferior identifier as on the earlier ENROL message.

2487 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2488 **target-address** the address to which the CANCELLED is sent. This will be the Superior  
2489 address as on the CONTEXT message.

2490 **sender-address** the address from which the CANCELLED is sent. This is an address of  
2491 the Inferior.

2492 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

2493 **General**

2494 **InvalidSuperior** – if “superior-identifier” is unknown

2495 **InvalidInferior** – if no ENROL has been received for this ”inferior-identifier”, or if  
2496 RESIGN has been received from this Inferior

2497 **WrongState** – if CONFIRM has been sent

2498 *Note – A CANCELLED message arriving before a CANCEL message is sent, or after a*  
2499 *CONFIRM has been sent will occur when the Inferior has taken an autonomous*  
2500 *decision and is not regarded as occurring in the wrong state. (The latter will cause a*  
2501 *CONTRADICTION message to be sent.)*

2502 **CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE**

2503 Sent from a Superior to an enrolled Inferior, when there is only one such enrolled Inferior. In this  
2504 case the two-phase exchange is not performed between the Superior and Inferior and the outcome  
2505 decision for the operations associated with the Inferior is determined by the Inferior.

| Parameter           | Type       |
|---------------------|------------|
| inferior-identifier | Identifier |
| report-hazard       | boolean    |

| Parameter      | Type               |
|----------------|--------------------|
| qualifiers     | List of qualifiers |
| target-address | BTP address        |
| sender-address | BTP address        |

2506

2507 **inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message for this  
 2508 Inferior.

2509 **report hazard** Defines whether the superior wishes to be informed if a mixed condition  
 2510 occurs for the operations associated with the Inferior. If “report-hazard” is “true”, the  
 2511 Inferior will reply with HAZARD if a mixed condition occurs, or if the Inferior cannot  
 2512 determine that a mixed condition has not occurred. If “report-hazard” is false, the  
 2513 Inferior will report only its own decision, regardless of whether that decision was  
 2514 correctly and consistently applied. Default is false.

2515 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2516 **target-address** the address to which the CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE message is sent This  
 2517 will be the “inferior-address” on the ENROL message.

2518 **sender-address** the address from which the CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE is sent. This is an  
 2519 address of the Superior.

2520 CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE can be issued by a Superior to an Inferior from whom PREPARED  
 2521 has been received (subject to the requirement that there is only one enrolled Inferior).

2522 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

2523 **General**

2524 **InvalidInferior** – if “inferior-identifier” is unknown

2525 **WrongState** – if a PREPARE has already been sent to this Inferior

2526 **HAZARD**

2527 Sent when the Inferior has either discovered a “mixed” condition: that is unable to correctly and  
 2528 consistently cancel or confirm the operations in accord with the decision , or when the Inferior is  
 2529 unable to determine that a “mixed” condition has not occurred.

2530 HAZARD is also used to reply to a CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE if the Inferior determines there is a  
 2531 mixed condition within its associated operations or is unable to determine that there is not a  
 2532 mixed condition.

2533 *Note - If the Inferior makes its own autonomous decision then it signals that decision with*  
 2534 *CONFIRMED or CANCELLED and waits to receive a confirmatory CONFIRM or*

2535 *CANCEL, or a CONTRADICTION if the autonomous decision by the Inferior was*  
 2536 *the opposite of that made by the Superior.*  
 2537

| Parameter           | Type               |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| superior-identifier | Identifier         |
| inferior-identifier | Identifier         |
| level               | mixed/possible     |
| qualifiers          | List of qualifiers |
| target-address      | BTP address        |
| sender-address      | BTP address        |

2538

2539 **superior-identifier** The “superior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

2540 **inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message

2541 **level** indicates, with value “mixed” that a mixed condition has definitely occurred; or, with  
 2542 value “possible” that it is unable to determine whether a mixed condition has occurred  
 2543 or not.

2544 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2545 **target-address** the address to which the HAZARD is sent. This will be the superior  
 2546 address from the ENROL message.

2547 **sender-address** the address from which the HAZARD is sent. This is an address of the  
 2548 Inferior.

2549 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

2550 **General**

2551 **InvalidSuperior** – if “superior-identifier” is unknown

2552 **InvalidInferior** – if no ENROL has been received for this “inferior-identifier”, or if  
 2553 RESIGN has been received from this Inferior

2554 The form HAZARD/mixed refers to a HAZARD message with “level” = “mixed”, the form  
 2555 HAZARD/possible refers to a HAZARD message with “level” = “possible”.

2556 **CONTRADICTION**

2557 Sent by the Superior to an Inferior that has taken an autonomous decision contrary to the decision  
2558 for the atom. This is detected by the Superior when the ‘wrong’ one of CONFIRMED or  
2559 CANCELLED is received. CONTRADICTION is also sent in response to a HAZARD message.

| Parameter           | Type               |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| inferior-identifier | Identifier         |
| qualifiers          | List of qualifiers |
| target-address      | BTP address        |
| sender-address      | BTP address        |

2560

2561 **inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message for this  
2562 Inferior.

2563 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2564 **target-address** the address to which the CONTRADICTION message is sent. This will be  
2565 the “inferior-address” from the ENROL message.

2566 **sender-address** the address from which the CONTRADICTION is sent. This is an  
2567 address of the Superior.

2568 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”)

2569 **General**

2570 **InvalidInferior** – if “inferior-identifier” is unknown

2571 **WrongState** – if neither CONFIRMED or CANCELLED has been sent by this Inferior

2572 **SUPERIOR\_STATE**

2573 Sent by a Superior as a query to an Inferior when

2574 1. in the active state

2575 2. there is uncertainty what state the Inferior has reached (due to recovery from  
2576 previous failure or other reason).

2577 Also sent by the Superior to the Inferior in response to a received INFERIOR\_STATE, in  
2578 particular states.

| Parameter           | Type       |
|---------------------|------------|
| inferior-identifier | Identifier |

| Parameter          | Type               |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| status             | <i>see below</i>   |
| response-requested | Boolean            |
| qualifiers         | List of qualifiers |
| target-address     | BTP address        |
| sender-address     | BTP address        |

2579

2580 **inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message for this  
 2581 Inferior.

2582 **status** states the current state of the Superior, in terms of its relation to this Inferior only.

| status value             | Meaning   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <i>active</i>            | The relationship with the Inferior is in the active state from the perspective of the Superior; ENROLLED has been sent, PREPARE has not been sent and PREPARED has not been received (as far as the Superior knows) |
| <i>prepared-received</i> | PREPARED has been received from the Inferior, but no outcome is yet available   |
| <i>inaccessible</i>      | The state information for the Superior, or for its relationship with this Inferior, if it exists, cannot be accessed at the moment. This should be a transient condition  |
| <i>unknown</i>           | The Inferior is not known – it does not exist from the perspective of the Superior. The Inferior can treat this as an instruction to cancel any associated operations   |

2583

2584 **response-requested** true, if SUPERIOR\_STATE is sent as a query at the Superior’s  
 2585 initiative; false, if SUPERIOR\_STATE is sent in reply to a received  
 2586 INFERIOR\_STATE or other message. Can only be true if status is active or prepared-  
 2587 received. Default is “false”

2588 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2589 **target-address** the address to which the SUPERIOR\_STATE message is sent. This will  
 2590 be the “inferior-address” from the ENROL message.

2591 **sender-address** the address from which the SUPERIOR\_STATE is sent. This is an  
2592 address of the Superior.

2593 The Inferior, on receiving SUPERIOR\_STATE with “response-requested = true, should reply in a  
2594 timely manner by (depending on its state) repeating the previous message it sent or by sending  
2595 INFERIOR\_STATE with the appropriate status value.

2596 A status of unknown shall only be sent if it has been determined for certain that the Superior has  
2597 no knowledge of the Inferior, or (equivalently) it can be determined that the relationship with the  
2598 Inferior was cancelled. If there could be persistent information corresponding to the Superior, but  
2599 it is not accessible from the entity receiving an INFERIOR\_STATE/\*y (or other) message  
2600 targeted to the Superior or that entity cannot determine whether any such persistent information  
2601 exists or not, the response shall be Inaccessible.

2602 SUPERIOR\_STATE/unknown is also used as a response to messages, other than  
2603 INFERIOR\_STATE/\*y that are received when the Inferior is not known (and it is known there is  
2604 no state information for it).

2605 The form SUPERIOR\_STATE/abcd refers to a SUPERIOR\_STATE message status having a  
2606 value equivalent to “abcd” (for active, prepared-received, unknown and inaccessible) and with  
2607 “response-requested” = “false”. SUPERIOR\_STATE/abcd/y refers to a similar message, but with  
2608 “response-requested” = “true”. The form SUPERIOR\_STATE/\*y refers to a  
2609 SUPERIOR\_STATE message with “response-requested” = “true” and any value for status.

## 2610 INFERIOR\_STATE

2611 Sent by an Inferior as a query when in the active state to a Superior, when (due recovery from  
2612 previous failure or other reason) there is uncertainty what state the Superior has reached.

2613 Also sent by the Inferior to the Superior in response to a received SUPERIOR\_STATE, in  
2614 particular states.

| Parameter           | Type               |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| superior-identifier | Identifier         |
| inferior-identifier | Identifier         |
| status              | <i>see below</i>   |
| response-requested  | Boolean            |
| qualifiers          | List of qualifiers |
| target-address      | BTP address        |
| sender-address      | BTP address        |

2615

2616 **superior-identifier** The “superior-identifier” as used on the ENROL message

2617 **inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

2618 **status** states the current state of the Inferior for the atomic business transaction, which  
2619 corresponds to the last message sent to the Superior by (or in the case of ENROL for)  
2620 the Inferior

| <b>status value</b> | <b>meaning/previous message sent</b>  |
|---------------------|---|
| <i>active</i>       | The relationship with the Superior is in the active state from the perspective of the Inferior; ENROL has been sent, a decision to send PREPARED has not been made. |
| <i>inaccessible</i> | The state information for the relationship with the Superior, if it exists, cannot be accessed at the moment. This should be a transient condition                  |
| <i>unknown</i>      | The Inferior is not known – it does not exist from the perspective of the Superior. The Inferior can be treated as cancelled  |

2621

2622 **response-requested** “true” if INFERIOR\_STATE is sent as a query at the Superior’s  
2623 initiative; “false” if INFERIOR\_STATE is sent in reply to a received  
2624 SUPERIOR\_STATE or other message. Can only be “true” if “status” is “active” or  
2625 “prepared-received”. Default is “false”

2626 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2627 **target-address** the address to which the INFERIOR\_STATE is sent. This will be the  
2628 “target-address” as used the original ENROL message.

2629 **sender-address** the address from which the INFERIOR\_STATE is sent. This is an  
2630 address of the Inferior.

2631 The Superior, on receiving INFERIOR\_STATE with “response-requested” = “true”, should reply  
2632 in a timely manner by (depending on its state) repeating the previous message it sent or by  
2633 sending SUPERIOR\_STATE with the appropriate status value.

2634 A status of “unknown” shall only be sent if it has been determined for certain that the Inferior has  
2635 no knowledge of a relationship with the Superior. If there could be persistent information  
2636 corresponding to the Superior, but it is not accessible from the entity receiving an  
2637 SUPERIOR\_STATE/\*y (or other) message targetted on the Inferior or the entity cannot  
2638 determine whether any such persistent information exists, the response shall be “inaccessible”.

2639 INFERIOR\_STATE/unknown is also used as a response to messages, other than  
2640 SUPERIOR\_STATE/\*y that are received when the Inferior is not known (and it is known there  
2641 is no state information for it).

2642 A SUPERIOR\_STATE/INFERIOR\_STATE exchange that determines that one or both sides are  
2643 in the active state does not require that the Inferior be cancelled (unlike some other two-phase



2644 commit protocols). The relationship between Superior and Inferior, and related application  
 2645 elements may be continued, with new application messages carrying the same CONTEXT.  
 2646 Similarly, if the Inferior is prepared but the Superior is active, there is no required impact on the  
 2647 progression of the relationship between them.

2648 The form INFERIOR\_STATE/abcd refers to a INFERIOR\_STATE message status having a  
 2649 value equivalent to “abcd” (for active, unknown and inaccessible) and with “response-requested”  
 2650 = “false”. INFERIOR\_STATE/abcd/y refers to a similar message, but with “response-requested”  
 2651 = “true”. The form INFERIOR\_STATE/\*y refers to a INFERIOR\_STATE message with  
 2652 “response-requested” = “true” and any value for status.

2653 **REDIRECT**

2654 Sent when the address previously given for a Superior or Inferior is no longer valid and the  
 2655 relevant state information is now accessible with a different address (but the same superior or  
 2656 “inferior-identifier”).

| Parameter           | Type                 |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| superior-identifier | Identifier           |
| inferior-identifier | Identifier           |
| old-address         | Set of BTP addresses |
| new-address         | Set of BTP addresses |
| qualifiers          | List of qualifiers   |
| target-address      | BTP address          |

2657

2658 **superior-identifier** The “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message and used on an  
 2659 ENROL message. (present only if the REDIRECT is sent from the Inferior).

2660 **inferior-identifier** The “inferior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

2661 **old-address** The previous address of the sender of REDIRECT. A match is considered to  
 2662 apply if any of the “old-address” values match one that is already known.

2663 **new-address** The (set of alternatives) “new-address” values to be used for messages sent  
 2664 to this entity.

2665 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2666 **target-address** the address to which the REDIRECT is sent. This is the address of the  
 2667 opposite side (superior/inferior) as given in a CONTEXT or ENROL message

2668 If the actor whose address is changed is an Inferior, the “new-address” value replaces the  
 2669 “inferior-address” as present in the ENROL.

2670 If the actor whose address is changed is a Superior, the “new-address” value replaces the Superior  
2671 address as present in the CONTEXT message (or as present in any other mechanism used to  
2672 establish the Superior:Inferior relationship).

## 2673 Messages used in control relationships

### 2674 BEGIN

2675 A request to a Factory to create a new Business Transaction. This may either be a new top-level  
2676 transaction, in which case the Composer or Coordinator will be the Decider, or the new Business  
2677 Transaction may be immediately made the Inferior within an existing Business Transaction (thus  
2678 creating a sub-Composer or sub-Coordinator).

| Parameter        | Type               |
|------------------|--------------------|
| transaction-type | cohesion/atom      |
| qualifiers       | List of qualifiers |
| target-address   | BTP address        |
| reply-address    | BTP address        |

2679

2680 **transaction-type** identifies whether a new Cohesion or new Atom is to be created; this  
2681 value will be the “superior-type” in the new CONTEXT

2682 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers. The standard qualifier “Transaction timelimit”  
2683 may be present on BEGIN, to set the timelimit for the new business transaction and  
2684 will be copied to the new CONTEXT. The standard qualifier “Inferior name” may be  
2685 present if there is a CONTEXT related to the BEGIN.

2686 **target-address** the address of the entity to which the BEGIN is sent. How this address is  
2687 acquired and the nature of the entity are outside the scope of this specification.

2688 **reply-address** the address to which the replying BEGUN and related CONTEXT message  
2689 should be sent.

2690 A new top-level Business Transaction is created if there is no CONTEXT related to the BEGIN.  
2691 A Business Transaction that is to be Inferior in an existing Business Transaction is created if the  
2692 CONTEXT message for the existing Business Transaction is related to the BEGIN. In this case,  
2693 the Factory is responsible for enrolling the new Composer or Coordinator as an Inferior of the  
2694 Superior identified in that CONTEXT.

2695 *Note – This specification does not provide a standardised means to determine which of*  
2696 *the Inferiors of a sub-Composer are in its confirm set. This is considered part of the*  
2697 *application:inferior relationship.*

2698 The forms BEGIN/cohesion and BEGIN/atom refer to BEGIN with “transaction-type” having the  
2699 corresponding value.

2700 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “reply-address”)

2701

**General**

2702

**Redirect** – if the Factory now has a different address

2703

**WrongState** - only issued if there is a related CONTEXT, and the Superior identified by

2704

the CONTEXT is in the wrong state to enrol new Inferiors

2705

**BEGUN**

2706

BEGUN is a reply to BEGIN. There is always a related CONTEXT, which is the CONTEXT for

2707

the new business transaction.

| Parameter              | Type                 |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| decider-address        | Set of BTP addresses |
| inferior-address       | Set of BTP addresses |
| transaction-identifier | Identifier           |
| qualifiers             | List of qualifiers   |
| target-address         | BTP address          |

2708

2709

**decider-address** for a top-most transaction (no CONTEXT related to the BEGIN), this is

2710

the address to which PREPARE\_INFERIORS, CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION,

2711

CANCEL\_TRANSACTION, CANCEL\_INFERIORS and

2712

REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES messages are to be sent; if a CONTEXT was

2713

related to the BEGIN this parameter is absent

2714

**inferior-address** for a non-top-most transaction (a CONTEXT was related to the BEGIN),

2715

this is the “inferior-address” used in the enrolment with the Superior identified by the

2716

CONTEXT related to the BEGIN. The parameter is optional (implementor’s choice) if

2717

this is not a top-most transaction; it shall be absent if this is a top-most transaction.

2718

**transaction-identifier** if this is a top-most transaction, this is an globally-unambiguous

2719

identifier for the new Decider (Composer or Coordinator). If this is not a top-most

2720

transaction, the transaction-identifier shall be the inferior-identifier used in the

2721

enrolment with the Superior identified by the CONTEXT related to the BEGIN.

2722

*Note – The “transaction-identifier” may be identical to the “superior-identifier” in*

2723

*the CONTEXT that is related to the BEGUN*

2724

**qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2725

**target-address** the address to which the BEGUN is sent. This will be the “reply-address”

2726

from the BEGIN.

2727

At implementation option, the “decider-address” and/or “inferior-address” and the “superior-

2728

address” in the related CONTEXT may be the same or may be different. There is no general

2729

requirement that they even use the same bindings. Any may also be the same as the “target-

2730 address” of the BEGIN message (the identifier on messages will ensure they are applied to the  
2731 appropriate Composer or Coordinator).

2732 No FAULT messages are issued on receiving BEGUN.

### 2733 PREPARE\_INFERIORS

2734 Sent from a Terminator to a Decider, but only if it is a Cohesion Composer, to tell it to prepare all  
2735 or some of its inferiors, by sending PREPARE to any that have not already sent PREPARED,  
2736 RESIGN or CANCELLED to the Decider (Composer) on its relationships as Superior. If the  
2737 inferiors-list parameter is absent, the request applies to all the inferiors; if the parameter is  
2738 present, it applies only to the identified inferiors of the Decider (Composer).

| Parameter              | Type                |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| transaction-identifier | Identifier          |
| inferiors-list         | List of Identifiers |
| qualifiers             | List of qualifiers  |
| target-address         | BTP address         |
| reply-address          | BTP address         |

2739

2740 **transaction identifier** identifies the Decider and will be the transaction-identifier from the  
2741 BEGUN message.

2742 **inferiors-list** defines which of the Inferiors of this Decider preparation is requested for,  
2743 using the “inferior-identifiers” as on the ENROL received by the Decider (in its role as  
2744 Superior). If this parameter is absent, the PREPARE applies to all Inferiors.

2745 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2746 **target-address** the address to which the PREPARE\_INFERIORS message is sent. This  
2747 will be the decider-address from the BEGUN message.

2748 **reply-address** the address of the Terminator sending the PREPARE\_INFERIORS  
2749 message.

2750 For all Inferiors identified in the inferiors-list parameter (all Inferiors if the parameter is absent),  
2751 from which none of PREPARED, CANCELLED or RESIGNED has been received, the Decider  
2752 shall issue PREPARE. It will reply to the Terminator, using the “reply-address” on the  
2753 PREPARE\_INFERIORS message, sending an INFERIOR\_STATUSES message giving the status  
2754 of the Inferiors identified on the inferiors-list parameter (all of them if the parameter was absent).

2755 If one or more of the “inferior-identifier”s in the "inferior-list" is unknown (does not correspond  
2756 to an enrolled Inferior), a FAULT/Invalid-inferior shall be returned. It is an implementation  
2757 option whether CANCEL is sent to any of the Inferiors that are validly identified in the "inferiors-  
2758 list".

2759 Types of FAULT possible (sent to Superior address)

2760 **General**

2761 **InvalidDecider** – if Decider address is unknown

2762 **Redirect** – if the Decider now has a different “decider-address”

2763 **UnknownTransaction** – if the transaction-identifier is unknown

2764 **InvalidInferior** – if one or more inferior-identifiers on the inferiors-list is unknown

2765 **WrongState** – if a CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION or CANCEL\_TRANSACTION has  
2766 already been received by this Composer.

2767 The form PREPARE\_INFERIORS/all refers to a PREPARE\_INFERIORS message where the  
2768 “inferiors-list” parameter is absent. The form PREPARE\_INFERIORS/specific refers to a  
2769 PREPARE\_INFERIORS message where the “inferiors-list” parameter is present.

2770 **CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION**

2771 Sent from a Terminator to a Decider to request confirmation of the business transaction. If the  
2772 business transaction is a Cohesion, the confirm-set is specified by the “inferiors-list” parameter.

| Parameter              | Type                |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| transaction-identifier | Identifier          |
| inferiors-list         | List of Identifiers |
| report-hazard          | Boolean             |
| qualifiers             | List of qualifiers  |
| target-address         | BTP address         |
| reply-address          | BTP address         |

2773

2774 **transaction-identifier** identifies the Decider. This will be the transaction-identifier from  
2775 the BEGUN message.

2776 **inferiors-list** defines which Inferiors enrolled with the Decider, if it is a Cohesion  
2777 Composer, are to be confirmed, using the “inferior-identifiers” as on the ENROL  
2778 received by the Decider (in its role as Superior). Shall be absent if the Decider is an  
2779 Atom Coordinator.

2780 **report-hazard** Defines whether the Terminator wishes to be informed of hazard events and  
2781 contradictory decisions within the business transaction. If “report-hazard” is “true”, the  
2782 receiver will wait until responses (CONFIRMED, CANCELLED or HAZARD) have  
2783 been received from all of its inferiors, ensuring that any hazard events are reported. If  
2784 “report-hazard” is “false”, the Decider will reply with

2785            TRANSACTION\_CONFIRMED or TRANSACTION\_CANCELLED as soon as the  
2786            decision for the transaction is known.

2787            **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2788            **target-address** the address to which the CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION message is sent.  
2789            This will be the “decider-address” on the BEGUN message.

2790            **reply-address** the address of the Terminator sending the CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION  
2791            message.

2792            If the “inferiors-list” parameter is present, the Inferiors identified shall be the “confirm-set” of the  
2793            Cohesion. If the parameter is absent and the business transaction is a Cohesion, the “confirm-set”  
2794            shall be all remaining Inferiors. If the business transaction is an Atom, the “confirm-set” is  
2795            automatically all the Inferiors.

2796            Any Inferiors from which RESIGN is received are not counted in the confirm-set.

2797            If, for each of the Inferiors in the confirm-set, PREPARE has not been sent and PREPARED has  
2798            not been received, PREPARE shall be issued to that Inferior.

2799            *NOTE -- If PREPARE has been sent but PREPARED not yet received from an Inferior in*  
2800            *the confirm-set, it is an implementation option whether and when to re-send*  
2801            *PREPARE. The Superior implementation may choose to re-send PREPARE if there*  
2802            *are indications that the earlier PREPARE was not delivered.*

2803            A confirm decision may be made only if PREPARED has been received from all Inferiors in the  
2804            “confirm-set”. The making of the decision shall be persistent (and if it is not possible to persist  
2805            the decision, it is not made). If there is only one remaining Inferior in the “confirm set” and  
2806            PREPARE has not been sent to it, CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE may be sent to it.

2807            All remaining Inferiors that are not in the confirm set shall be cancelled.

2808            If a confirm decision is made and “report-hazard” was “false”, a  
2809            TRANSACTION\_CONFIRMED message shall be sent to the “reply-address”.

2810            If a cancel decision is made and “report-hazard” was “false”, a TRANSACTION\_CANCELLED  
2811            message shall be sent to the “reply-address”.

2812            If "report-hazard" was "true", TRANSACTION\_CONFIRMED shall be sent to the "reply-  
2813            address" after CONFIRMED has been received from each Inferior in the confirm-set and  
2814            CANCELLED or RESIGN from each and any Inferior not in the confirm-set.

2815            If “report-hazard” was “true” and any HAZARD or contradictory message was received (i.e.  
2816            CANCELLED from an Inferior in the confirm-set or CONFIRMED from an Inferior not in the  
2817            confirm-set), an INFERIOR\_STATUSES reporting the status for all Inferiors shall be sent to the  
2818            “reply-address”.

2819            If one or more of the "inferior-identifier"s in the "inferior-list" is unknown (does not correspond  
2820            to an enrolled Inferior), a FAULT/Invalid-inferior shall be returned. The Decider shall not make a  
2821            confirm decision and shall not send CONFIRM to any Inferior.

2822 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “reply-address”)

2823        **General**

2824        **InvalidDecider** – if Decider address is unknown

2825        **Redirect** – if the Decider now has a different “decider-address”

2826        **UnknownTransaction** – if the transaction-identifier is unknown

2827        **InvalidInferior** – if one or more “inferior -identifiers” in the inferiors-list is unknown

2828        **WrongState** – if a CANCEL\_TRANSACTION has already been received .

2829 The form CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION/all refers to a CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION message  
 2830 where the “inferiors-list” parameter is absent. The form CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION/specific  
 2831 refers to a CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION message where the “inferiors-list” parameter is present.

2832 **TRANSACTION\_CONFIRMED**

2833 A Decider sends TRANSACTION\_CONFIRMED to a Terminator in reply to  
 2834 CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION if all of the confirm-set confirms (and, for a Cohesion, all other  
 2835 Inferiors cancel) without reporting hazards, or if the Decider made a confirm decision and the  
 2836 CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION had a “report-hazards” value of “false”.

| Parameter              | Type               |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| transaction-identifier | identifier         |
| qualifiers             | List of qualifiers |
| target-address         | BTP address        |

2837

2838        **transaction-identifier** the “transaction-identifier” as on the BEGUN message (i.e. the  
 2839        identifier of the Decider as a whole).

2840        **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2841        **target-address** the address to which the TRANSACTION\_CONFIRMED is sent., this  
 2842        will be the “reply-address” from the CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION message

2843 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “decider-address”)

2844        **General**

2845        **InvalidTerminator** – if Terminator address is unknown

2846        **UnknownTransaction** – if the transaction-identifier is unknown

2847 **CANCEL\_TRANSACTION**

2848 Sent by a Terminator to a Decider at any time before CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION has been sent.

| Parameter              | Type               |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| transaction-identifier | Identifier         |
| report-hazard          | Boolean            |
| qualifiers             | List of qualifiers |
| target-address         | BTP address        |
| reply-address          | BTP address        |

2849

2850 **transaction-identifier** identifies the Decider and will be the transaction-identifier from the  
2851 BEGUN message.

2852 **report-hazard** Defines whether the Terminator wishes to be informed of hazard events and  
2853 contradictory decisions within the business transaction. If "report-hazard" is "true", the  
2854 receiver will wait until responses (CONFIRMED, CANCELLED or HAZARD) have  
2855 been received from all of its inferiors, ensuring that any hazard events are reported. If  
2856 "report-hazard" is "false", the Decider will reply with  
2857 TRANSACTION\_CANCELLED immediately.

2858 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2859 **target-address** the address to which the CANCEL\_TRANSACTION message is sent.  
2860 This will be the decider-address from the BEGUN message.

2861 **reply-address** the address of the Terminator sending the CANCEL\_TRANSACTION  
2862 message.

2863 The business transaction is cancelled – this is propagated to any remaining Inferiors by issuing  
2864 CANCEL to them. No more Inferiors will be permitted to enrol.

2865 If "report-hazard" was "false", a TRANSACTION\_CANCELLED message shall be sent to the  
2866 "reply-address".

2867 If "report-hazard" was "true" and any HAZARD or CONFIRMED message was received, an  
2868 INFERIOR\_STATUSES reporting the status for all Inferiors shall be sent to the "reply-address".

2869 If "report-hazard" was "true", TRANSACTION\_CANCELLED shall be sent to the "reply-  
2870 address" after CANCELLED or RESIGN has been received from each Inferior.

2871 Types of FAULT possible (sent to Superior address)

2872 **General**



- 2873 **InvalidDecider** – if Decider address is unknown
- 2874 **Redirect** – if the Decider now has a different “decider-address”
- 2875 **UnknownTransaction** – if the transaction-identifier is unknown
- 2876 **WrongState** – if a CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION has been received by this Composer.

2877 **CANCEL\_INFERIORS**

2878 Sent by a Terminator to a Decider, but only if is a Cohesion Composer, at any time before  
2879 CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION or CANCEL\_TRANSACTION has been sent.

| Parameter              | Type                |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| transaction-identifier | Identifier          |
| inferiors-list         | List of Identifiers |
| qualifiers             | List of qualifiers  |
| target-address         | BTP address         |
| reply-address          | BTP address         |

2880

2881 **transaction-identifier** identifies the Decider and will be the transaction-identifier from the  
2882 BEGUN message.

2883 **inferiors-list** defines which of the Inferiors of this Decider are to be cancelled, using the  
2884 “inferior-identifiers” as on the ENROL received by the Decider (in its role as  
2885 Superior).

2886 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2887 **target-address** the address to which the CANCEL\_TRANSACTION message is sent.  
2888 This will be the decider-address from the BEGUN message.

2889 **reply-address** the address of the Terminator sending the CANCEL\_TRANSACTION  
2890 message.

2891 Only the Inferiors identified in the inferiors-list are to be cancelled. Any other inferiors are  
2892 unaffected by a CANCEL\_INFERIORS. Further Inferiors may be enrolled.

2893 *Note – A CANCEL\_INFERIORS for all of the currently enrolled Inferiors will leave the*  
2894 *cohesion ‘empty’, but permitted to continue with new Inferiors, if any enrol.*

2895 If one or more of the "inferior-identifier"s in the "inferior-list" is unknown (does not correspond  
2896 to an enrolled Inferior), a FAULT/Invalid-inferior shall be returned. It is an implementation  
2897 option whether CANCEL is sent to any of the Inferiors that are validly identified in the "inferiors-  
2898 list".

- 2899 Types of FAULT possible (sent to Superior address)
- 2900        **General**
- 2901        **InvalidDecider** – if Decider address is unknown
- 2902        **Redirect** – if the Decider now has a different “decider-address”
- 2903        **UnknownTransaction** – if the transaction-identifier is unknown
- 2904        **InvalidInferior** – if one or more inferior-identifiers on the inferiors-list is unknown
- 2905        **WrongState** – if a CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION or CANCEL\_TRANSACTION has been  
2906            received by this Composer.

2907        **TRANSACTION\_CANCELLED**

2908        A Decider sends TRANSACTION\_CANCELLED to a Terminator in reply to  
2909        CANCEL\_TRANSACTION or in reply to CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION if the Decider decided  
2910        to cancel. In both cases, TRANSACTION\_CANCELLED is used only if all Inferiors cancelled  
2911        without reporting hazards or the CANCEL\_TRANSACTION or CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION  
2912        had a “report-hazard” value of “false.

**Parameter**

|                        |                    |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| transaction-identifier | identifier         |
| qualifiers             | List of qualifiers |
| target-address         | BTP address        |

- 2913
- 2914        **transaction-identifier** the “transaction-identifier” as on the BEGUN message (i.e. the  
2915            identifier of the Decider as a whole).
- 2916        **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.
- 2917        **target-address** the address to which the TRANSACTION\_CANCELLED is sent. This  
2918            will be the “reply-address” from the CANCEL\_TRANSACTION or  
2919            CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION message.

2920 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “decider-address”)

- 2921        **General**
- 2922        **InvalidTerminator** – if Terminator address is unknown
- 2923        **UnknownTransaction** – if the transaction-identifier is unknown

2924 **REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES**

2925 Sent to a Decider to ask it to report the status of its Inferiors with an INFERIOR\_STATUSES  
2926 message. It can also be sent to any actor with a “superior-address” or “inferior-address”, asking it  
2927 about the status of that transaction tree nodes Inferiors, if there are any. In this latter case, the  
2928 receiver may reject the request with a FAULT(StatusRefused). If it is prepared to reply, but has  
2929 no Inferiors, it replies with an INFERIOR\_STATUSES with an empty “status-list” parameter.

| Parameter         | Type                |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| target-identifier | Identifier          |
| inferiors-list    | List of Identifiers |
| qualifiers        | List of qualifiers  |
| target-address    | BTP address         |
| reply-address     | BTP address         |

2930

2931 **target-identifier** identifies the transaction (or transaction tree node). When the message is  
2932 used to a Decider, this will be the transaction-identifier from the BEGUN message.  
2933 Otherwise it will be the superior-identifier from a CONTEXT or an inferior-identifier  
2934 from an ENROL message.

2935 **inferiors-list** defines which inferiors enrolled with the target are to be included in the  
2936 INFERIOR\_STATUSES, using the “inferior-identifiers” as on the ENROL received  
2937 by the Decider (in its role as Superior). If the list is absent, the status of all enrolled  
2938 Inferiors will be reported.

2939 **qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers.

2940 **target-address** the address to which the REQUEST\_STATUS message is sent. When  
2941 used to a Decider, this will be the “decider-address” from the BEGUN message.  
2942 Otherwise it may be a “superior-address” from a CONTEXT or “inferior-address”  
2943 from an ENROL message.

2944 **reply-address** the address to which the replying INFERIOR\_STATUSES is to be sent

2945 Types of FAULT possible (sent to reply-address)

2946 **General**

2947 **Redirect** – if the intended target now has a different address

2948 **StatusRefused** – if the receiver is not prepared to report its status to the sender of this  
2949 message. This “fault-type” shall not be issued when a Decider receives  
2950 REQUEST\_STATUSES from the Terminator.

2951 **UnknownTransaction** – if the transaction-identifier is unknown

2952 The form REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES/all refers to a REQUEST\_STATUS with the  
2953 inferiors-list absent. The form REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUS/specific refers to a  
2954 REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUS with the inferiors-list present.

## 2955 INFERIOR\_STATUSES

2956 Sent by a Decider to report the status of all or some of its inferiors in response to a  
2957 REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES, PREPARE\_INFERIORS, CANCEL\_INFERIORS,  
2958 CANCEL\_TRANSACTION with “report-hazard” value of “true” and  
2959 CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION with “report-hazard” value of “true”. It is also used by any actor in  
2960 response to a received REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES to report the status of inferiors, if  
2961 there are any.

| Parameter             | Type                            |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| responders-identifier | Identifier                      |
| status-list           | Set of Status items - see below |
| general-qualifiers    | List of qualifiers              |
| target-address        | BTP address                     |

2962

2963 **responders-identifier** the target-identifier used on the  
2964 REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES.

2965 **status-list** contains a number of Status-items, each reporting the status of one of the  
2966 inferiors of the Decider. The fields of a Status-item are

| Field               | Type   |
|---------------------|--|
| inferior-identifier | Inferior-identifier, identifying which inferior this Status-item contains information for.   |
| status              | One of the status values below (these are a subset of those for STATUS)  |
| qualifiers          | A list of qualifiers as received from the particular inferior or associated with the inferior in earlier messages (e.g. an Inferior name qualifier). |

2967

2968 The status value reports the current status of the particular inferior, as known to the Decider  
2969 (Composer or Coordinator). Values are:

| status value    | Meaning                                      |
|-----------------|--|
| <i>active</i>   | The Inferior is enrolled                     |
| <i>resigned</i> | RESIGNED has been received from the Inferior |

| status value                  | Meaning  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <i>preparing</i>              | PREPARE has been sent to the inferior, none of PREPARED, RESIGNED, CANCELLED, HAZARD have been received        |
| <i>prepared</i>               | PREPARED has been received   |
| <i>autonomously confirmed</i> | CONFIRMED/auto has been received, no completion message has been sent  |
| <i>autonomously cancelled</i> | PREPARED had been received, and since then CANCELLED has been received but no completion message has been sent |
| <i>confirming</i>             | CONFIRM has been sent, no outcome reply has been received  |
| <i>confirmed</i>              | CONFIRMED/response has been received   |
| <i>cancelling</i>             | CANCEL has been sent, no outcome reply has been received   |
| <i>cancelled</i>              | CANCELLED has been received, and PREPARED was not received previously  |
| <i>cancel-contradiction</i>   | Confirm had been ordered (and may have been sent), but CANCELLED was received                                  |
| <i>confirm-contradiction</i>  | Cancel had been ordered (and may have been sent) but CONFIRM/auto was received                                 |
| <i>hazard</i>                 | A HAZARD message has been received   |
| <i>invalid</i>                | No such inferior is enrolled (used only in reply to a REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES/specific)                      |

2970

2971 **general-qualifiers** standardised or other qualifiers applying to the  
 2972 INFERIOR\_STATUSES as a whole. Each Status-item contains a “qualifiers” field  
 2973 containing qualifiers applying to (and received from) the particular Inferior.

2974 **target-address** the address to which the INFERIOR\_STATUSES is sent. This will be the  
 2975 “reply-address” on the received message

2976 If the inferiors-list parameter was present on the received message, only the inferiors identified by  
 2977 that parameter shall have their status reported in status-list of this message. If the inferiors-list  
 2978 parameter was absent, the status of all enrolled inferiors shall be reported, except that an inferior  
 2979 that had been reported as *cancelled* or *resigned* on a previous INFERIOR\_STATUSES message  
 2980 **may** be omitted (sender’s option).

2981 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “decider-address”)

2982

## *General*

2983

*InvalidTerminator* – if Terminator address is unknown

2984

*UnknownTransaction* – if the transaction-identifier is unknown

2985

## **Groups – combinations of related messages**

2986

The following combinations of messages form related groups, for which the meaning of the group is not just the aggregate of the meanings of the messages. The “&” notation is used to indicate relatedness. Messages appearing in parentheses in the names of groups in this section indicate messages that may or may not be present. The notation A & B / & C in a group name in this section indicates a group that contains A and B or A and C or A, B and C, possibly with any of those appearing more than once.

2987

2988

2989

2990

2991

2992

## **CONTEXT & application message**

2993

2994

2995

2996

2997

2998

**Meaning:** the transmission of the application message is deemed to be part of the business transaction identified by the CONTEXT. The exact effect of this for application work implied by the transmission of the message is determined by the application – in many cases, it will mean the effects of the application message are to be subject to the outcome delivered to an enrolled Inferior, thus requiring the enrolment of a new Inferior if no appropriate Inferior is enrolled or if the CONTEXT is for cohesion.

2999

3000

3001

3002

**target-address:** the “target-address” is that of the application message. It is not required that the application address be a BTP address (in particular, there is no BTP-defined “additional information” field – the application protocol (and its binding) may or may not have a similar construct).

3003

3004

3005

3006

There may be multiple application messages related to a single CONTEXT message. All the application messages so related are deemed to be part of the business transaction identified by the CONTEXT. This specification does not imply any further relatedness among the application messages themselves (though the application might).

3007

3008

3009

The actor that sends the group shall retain knowledge of the Superior address in the CONTEXT. If the CONTEXT is a CONTEXT/atom, the actor shall also keep track of transmitted CONTEXTs for which no CONTEXT\_REPLY has been received.

3010

3011

3012

If the CONTEXT is a CONTEXT/atom, the actor receiving the CONTEXT shall ensure that a CONTEXT\_REPLY message is sent back to the “reply-address” of the CONTEXT with the appropriate completion status.

3013

3014

3015

3016

3017

*Note – The representation of the relation between CONTEXT and one or more application messages depends on the binding to the carrier protocol. It is not necessary that the CONTEXT and application messages be closely associated “on the wire” (or even sent on the same connection) – some kind of referencing mechanism may be used.*

3018     **CONTEXT\_REPLY & ENROL**

3019             **Meaning:** the enrolment of the Inferior identified in the ENROL is to be performed with  
3020             the Superior identified in the CONTEXT message this CONTEXT\_REPLY is replying  
3021             to. If the “completion-status” of CONTEXT\_REPLY is “related”, failure of this  
3022             enrolment shall prevent the confirmation of the business transaction.

3023             **target-address:** the “target-address” is that of the CONTEXT\_REPLY. This will be the  
3024             “reply-address” of the CONTEXT message (in many cases, including request/reply  
3025             application exchanges, this address will usually be implicit).

3026             The “target-address” of the ENROL message is omitted.

3027             The actor receiving the related group will use the retained Superior address from the  
3028             CONTEXT sent earlier to forward the ENROL. When doing so, it changes the ENROL to  
3029             ask for a response (if it was an ENROL/no-rsp-req) and supplies its own address as the  
3030             “reply-address”, remembering the original “reply-address” if there was one.

3031             If ENROLLED is received and the original received ENROL was ENROL/rsp-req, the  
3032             ENROLLED is forwarded back to the original “reply-address”.

3033             If this attempt fails (i.e. ENROLLED is not received), and the “completion-status” of the  
3034             CONTEXT\_REPLY was “related”, the actor is required to ensure that the Superior does  
3035             not proceed to confirmation. How this is achieved is an implementation option, but must  
3036             take account of the possibility that direct communication with the Superior may fail. (One  
3037             method is to prevent CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION being sent to the Superior (in its role  
3038             as Decider); another is to enrol as another Inferior before sending the original CONTEXT  
3039             out with an application message). If the Superior is a sub-coordinator or sub-composer,  
3040             an enrolment failure must ensure the sub-coordinator does not send PREPARED to its  
3041             own Superior.

3042             If the actor receiving the related group is also the Superior (i.e. it has the same binding  
3043             address), the explicit forwarding of the ENROL is not required, but the resultant effect –  
3044             that if enrolment fails the Superior does not confirm or issue PREPARED – shall be the  
3045             same.

3046             A CONTEXT\_REPLY & ENROL group may contain multiple ENROL messages, for  
3047             several Inferiors. Each ENROL shall be forwarded and an ENROLLED reply received  
3048             before the Superior is allowed to confirm if the “completion-status” in the  
3049             CONTEXT\_REPLY was “related”.

3050             When the group is constructed, if the CONTEXT had “superior-type” value of “atom”,  
3051             the “completion-status” of the CONTEXT\_REPLY shall be “related”. If the “superior-  
3052             type” was “cohesive”, the “completion-status” shall be “incomplete” or “related” (as  
3053             required by the application). If the value is “incomplete”, the actor receiving the group  
3054             shall forward the ENROLs, but is not required to prevent confirmation (though it may do  
3055             so).

## 3056 CONTEXT\_REPLY (& ENROL) & PREPARED / & CANCELLED

3057 This combination is characterised by a related CONTEXT\_REPLY and either or both of  
3058 PREPARED and CANCELLED, with or without ENROL.

3059 **Meaning:** If ENROL is present, the meaning and required processing is the same as for  
3060 CONTEXT\_REPLY & ENROL. The PREPARED or CANCELLED message(s) are  
3061 forwarded to the Superior identified in the CONTEXT message this CONTEXT\_REPLY  
3062 is replying to.

3063 *Note – the combination of CONTEXT\_REPLY & ENROL & CANCELLED may be used*  
3064 *to force cancellation of an atom*

3065 **target-address:** the “target-address” is that of the CONTEXT\_REPLY. This will be the  
3066 “reply-address” of the CONTEXT message (in many cases, including request/reply  
3067 application exchanges, this address will usually be implicit).

3068 The “target-address” of the PREPARED and CANCELLED message is omitted – they  
3069 will be sent to the Superior identified in the earlier CONTEXT message.

3070 The actor receiving the group forwards the PREPARED or CANCELLED message to the  
3071 Superior in as for an ENROL, using the retained Superior address from the CONTEXT  
3072 sent earlier, except there is no reply required from the Superior.

3073 If (as is usual) an ENROL and PREPARED or CANCELLED message are for the same  
3074 Inferior, the ENROL shall be sent first, but the actor need not wait for the ENROLLED to  
3075 come back before sending the PREPARED or CANCELLED (so an  
3076 ENROL+PREPARED bundle from this actor to the Superior could be used).

3077 The group can contain multiple ENROL, PREPARED and CANCELLED messages.  
3078 Each PREPARED and CANCELLED message will be for a different Inferior.. There is  
3079 no constraint on the order of their forwarding, except that ENROL and PREPARED or  
3080 CANCELLED for the same Inferior shall be delivered to the Superior in the order  
3081 ENROL first, followed by the other message for that Inferior.

## 3082 CONTEXT\_REPLY & ENROL & application message (& PREPARED)

3083 This combination is characterised by a related CONTEXT\_REPLY, ENROL and an application  
3084 message. PREPARED may or may not be present in the related group.

3085 **Meaning:** the relation between the BTP messages is as for the preceding groups, The  
3086 transmission of the application message (and application effects implied by its  
3087 transmission) has been associated with the Inferior identified by the ENROL and will be  
3088 subject to the outcome delivered to that Inferior.

3089 **target-address:** the “target-address” of the group is the “target-address” of the  
3090 CONTEXT\_REPLY which shall also be the “target-address” of the application message.  
3091 The ENROL and PREPARED messages do not contain their “target-address” parameters.



3092 The processing of ENROL and PREPARED messages is the same as for the previous  
3093 groups.

3094 This group can be used when participation in business transaction (normally a cohesion),  
3095 is initiated by the service (Inferior) side, which fetches or acquires the CONTEXT, with  
3096 some associated application semantic, performs some work for the transaction and sends  
3097 an application message with a related ENROL. The CONTEXT\_REPLY allows the  
3098 addressing of the application (and the CONTEXT\_REPLY) to be distinct from that of the  
3099 Superior.

3100 The actor receiving the group may associate the “inferior-identifier” received on the  
3101 ENROL with the application message in a manner that is visible to the application  
3102 receiving the message (e.g. for subsequent use in Terminator:Decider exchanges).

### 3103 **BEGUN & CONTEXT**

3104 **Meaning:** the CONTEXT is that for the new business transaction, containing the  
3105 Superior address.

3106 **target-address:** the “target-address” is that of the BEGUN message – this will be the  
3107 “reply-address” of the earlier BEGIN message.

### 3108 **BEGIN & CONTEXT**

3109 **Meaning:** the new business transaction is to be an Inferior (sub-coordinator or sub-  
3110 composer) of the Superior identified by the CONTEXT. The Factory (receiver of the  
3111 BEGIN) will perform the enrolment.

3112 **target-address:** the “target-address” is that of the BEGIN – this will be the address of the  
3113 Factory.

### 3114 **Standard qualifiers**

3115 The following qualifiers are expected to be of general use to many applications and environments.  
3116 The URI “urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:qualifiers” is used in the Qualifier group  
3117 value for the qualifiers defined here.

### 3118 **Transaction timelimit**

3119 The transaction timelimit allows the Superior (or an application element initiating the business  
3120 transaction) to indicate the expected length of the active phase, and thus give an indication to the  
3121 Inferior of when it would be appropriate to initiate cancellation if the active phase appears to  
3122 continue too long. The time limit ends (the clock stops) when the Inferior decides to be prepared  
3123 and issues PREPARED to the Superior.

3124 It should be noted that the expiry of the time limit does not change the permissible actions of the  
3125 Inferior. At any time prior to deciding to be prepared (for an Inferior), the Inferior is **permitted** to  
3126 initiate cancellation for internal reasons. The timelimit gives an indication to the entity of when it  
3127 will be useful to exercise this right.

3128 The qualifier is propagated on a CONTEXT message.

3129 The “Qualifier name” shall be “transaction-timelimit”.

3130 The “Content” shall contain the following field:

| Content field | Type    |
|---------------|---------|
| Timelimit     | Integer |

3131

3132 **Timelimit** indicates the maximum (further) duration, expressed as whole seconds from the  
3133 time of transmission of the containing CONTEXT, of the active phase of the business  
3134 transaction.

### 3135 Inferior timeout

3136 This qualifier allows an Inferior to limit the duration of its “promise”, when sending PREPARED,  
3137 that it will maintain the ability to confirm or cancel the effects of all associated operations.  
3138 Without this qualifier, an Inferior is expected to retain the ability to confirm or cancel  
3139 indefinitely. If the timeout does expire, the Inferior is released from its promise and can apply the  
3140 decision indicated in the qualifier.

3141 It should be noted that BTP recognises the possibility that an Inferior may be forced to apply a  
3142 confirm or cancel decision before the CONFIRM or CANCEL is received and before this timeout  
3143 expires (or if this qualifier is not used). Such a decision is termed a heuristic decision, and (as  
3144 with other transaction mechanisms), is considered to be an exceptional event. As with heuristic  
3145 decisions, the taking of an autonomous decision by a Inferior **subsequent** to the expiry of this  
3146 timeout, is liable to cause contradictory decisions across the business transaction. BTP ensures  
3147 that at least the occurrence of such a contradiction will be (eventually) reported to the Superior of  
3148 the business transaction. BTP treats “true” heuristic decisions and autonomous decisions after  
3149 timeout the same way – in fact, the expiry in this timeout does not cause a qualitative (state table)  
3150 change in what can happen, but rather a step change in the probability that it will.

3151 The expiry of the timeout does not strictly require that the Inferior immediately invokes the  
3152 intended decision, only that is at liberty to do so. An implementation may choose to only apply  
3153 the decision if there is contention for the underlying resource, for example. Nevertheless,  
3154 Superiors are recommended to avoid relying on this and ensure decisions for the business  
3155 transaction are made before these timeouts expire (and allow a margin of error for network  
3156 latency etc.).

3157 The qualifier may be present on a PREPARED message. If the PREPARED message has the  
3158 “default-is cancel” parameter “true”, then the “IntendedDecision” field of this qualifier shall have  
3159 the value “cancel”.

3160 The “Qualifier name” shall be “inferior-timeout”.

3161 The “Content” shall contain the following fields:

| Content field    | Type                  |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| Timeout          | Integer               |
| IntendedDecision | "confirm" or "cancel" |

3162

3163 **Timeout** indicates how long, expressed as whole seconds from the time of transmission of the  
 3164 carrying message, the Inferior intends to maintain its ability to either confirm or cancel the effects  
 3165 of the associated operations, as ordered by the receiving Superior.

3166 **IntendedDecision** indicates which outcome will be applied, if the timeout completes and an  
 3167 autonomous decision is made.

### 3168 **Minimum inferior timeout**

3169 This qualifier allows a Superior to constrain the Inferior timeout qualifier received from the  
 3170 Inferior. If a Superior knows that the decision for the business transaction will not be determined  
 3171 for some period, it can require that Inferiors do not send PREPARED messages with Inferior  
 3172 timeouts that would expire before then. An Inferior that is unable or unwilling to send a  
 3173 PREPARED message with a longer (or no) timeout **should** cancel, and reply with CANCELLED.

3174 The qualifier may be present on a CONTEXT, ENROLLED or PREPARE message. If present on  
 3175 more than one, and with different values of the MinimumTimeout field, the value on  
 3176 ENROLLED shall prevail over that on CONTEXT and the value on PREPARE shall prevail over  
 3177 either of the others.

3178 The "Qualifier name" shall be "minimum-inferior-timeout".

3179 The "Content" shall contain the following field:

| Content field  | Type    |
|----------------|---------|
| MinimumTimeout | Integer |

3180

3181 **Minimum Timeout** is the minimum value of timeout, expressed as whole seconds, that will be  
 3182 acceptable in the Inferior timeout qualifier on an answering PREPARED message.

### 3183 **Inferior name**

3184 This qualifier allows an Enroller to supply a name for the Inferior that will be visible on  
 3185 INFERIOR\_STATUSES and thus allow the Terminator to determine which Inferior (of the  
 3186 Composer or Coordinator) is related to which application work. This is in addition to the  
 3187 "inferior-identifier" field. The name can be human-readable and can also be used in fault tracing,  
 3188 debugging and auditing.

3189 The name is never used by the BTP actors themselves to identify each other or to direct messages.  
 3190 (The BTP actors use the addresses and the identifiers in the message parameters for those  
 3191 purposes.)

3192 This specification makes no requirement that the names are unambiguous within any scope  
3193 (unlike the globally unambiguous “inferior-identifier” on ENROLLED and BEGUN). Other  
3194 specifications, including those defining use of BTP with a particular application may place  
3195 requirements on the use and form of the names. (This may include reference to information  
3196 passed in application messages or in other, non-standardised, qualifiers.)

3197 The qualifier may be present on BEGIN, ENROL and in the “qualifiers” field of a Status-item in  
3198 INFERIOR\_STATUSES. It is present on BEGIN only if there is a related CONTEXT; if present,  
3199 the same qualifier value **should** be included in the consequent ENROL. If  
3200 INFERIOR\_STATUSES includes a Status-item for an Inferior whose ENROL had an inferior-  
3201 name qualifier, the same qualifier value **should** be included in the Status-item.

3202 The “Qualifier -name” shall be “inferior-name”

3203 The “Content” shall contain the following fields:

| Content field | Type   |
|---------------|--------|
| inferior-name | String |

3204

3205 **Inferior name** the name assigned to the enrolling Inferior.

## 3206 State Tables

3207 The state tables deal with the state transitions of the Superior and Inferior roles and which  
3208 message can be sent and received in each state. The state tables directly cover only a single, bi-  
3209 lateral Superior:Inferior relationship. The interactions between, for example, multiple Inferiors of  
3210 a single Superior that will apply the same decision to all or some (of them), are dealt with in the  
3211 definitions of the “decision” events which also specify when changes are made to persistent state  
3212 information (see below).

3213 There are two state tables, one for Superior, one for Inferior. States are identified by a letter-digit  
3214 pair, with upper-case letters for the superior, lower-case for the inferior. The same letter is used to  
3215 group states which have the same, or similar, persistent state, with the digit indicating volatile  
3216 state changes or minor variations. Corresponding upper and lower-case letters are used to identify  
3217 (approximately) corresponding Superior and Inferior states.

3218 The Inferior table includes events occurring both at the Inferior as such and at the associated  
3219 Enroller, as the Enroller’s actions are constrained by and constrain the Inferior role itself.

3220 In the state tables, each side is either waiting to make a decision or can send a message. For some  
3221 states, the message to be sent is a repetition of a regular message; for other states, the  
3222 INFERIOR\_STATE or SUPERIOR\_STATE message can be sent, requesting a response.  
3223 Normally, on entry to a state that allows the sending of any message other than one of the  
3224 \*\_STATE messages, the implementation will send that message – failure to do so will cause the  
3225 relationship to lock up. The message can be resent if the implementation determines that the  
3226 original message (or the next message sent in reply) may have been lost.

## 3227 Status queries

3228 In BTP the messages SUPERIOR\_STATE and INFERIOR\_STATE are available to prompt the  
3229 peer to report its current state by repeating the previous message (when this is allowed) or by  
3230 sending the other \*\_STATE message. The “reply\_requested” parameter of these messages  
3231 distinguishes between their use as a prompt and as a reply. An implementation receiving a  
3232 \*\_STATE message with “reply\_requested” as “true” is not required to reply immediately – it may  
3233 choose to delay any reply until a decision event occurs and then send the appropriate new  
3234 message (e.g. on receiving INFERIOR\_STATE/prepared/y while in state E1, a superior is  
3235 permitted to delay until it has performed “decide to confirm” or “decide to cancel”). However,  
3236 this may cause the other side to repeatedly send interrogatory \*\_STATE messages.

3237 Note that a Superior (or some entity standing in for a now-extinct Superior) uses  
3238 SUPERIOR\_STATE/unknown to reply to messages received from an Inferior where the  
3239 Superior:Inferior relationship is in an unknown (using state “Y1”). The \*\_STATE messages with  
3240 a “state” value “inaccessible” can be used as a reply when **any** message is received and the  
3241 implementation is temporarily unable to determine whether the relationship is known or what the  
3242 state is. Receipt of the \*\_STATE/inaccessible messages is not shown in the tables and has no  
3243 effect on the state at the receiving side (though it may cause the implementation to resend its own  
3244 message after some interval of its own choosing).

## 3245 Decision events

3246 The persistent state changes (equivalent to logging in a regular transaction system) and some  
3247 other events are modelled as “decision events” (e.g. “decide to confirm”, “decide to be  
3248 prepared”). The exact nature of the real events and changes in an implementation that are  
3249 modelled by these events depends on the position of the Superior or Inferior within the business  
3250 transaction and on features of the implementation (e.g. making of a persistent record of the  
3251 decision means that the information will survive at least some failures that otherwise lose state  
3252 information, but the level of survival depends on the purpose of the implementation). Table 3 and  
3253 Table 4 define the decision events.

3254 The Superior event “decide to prepare” is considered semi-persistent. Since the sending of  
3255 PREPARE indicates that the application exchange (to associate operations with the Inferior) is  
3256 complete, it is not meaningful for the Superior:Inferior relationship to revert to an earlier state  
3257 corresponding to an incomplete application exchange. However, implementations are not required  
3258 to make the sending of PREPARE persistent in terms of recovery – a Superior that experiences  
3259 failure after sending PREPARE may, on recovery, have no information about the transaction, in  
3260 which case it is considered to be in the completed state (Z), which will imply the cancellation of  
3261 the Inferior and its associated operations.

3262 Where a Superior is an Intermediate (i.e. is itself an Inferior to another Superior entity), in a  
3263 transaction tree, its “decide to confirm” and “decide to cancel” decisions will in fact be the receipt  
3264 of a CONFIRM or CANCEL instruction from its own Superior, without necessary change of local  
3265 persistent information (which would combine both superior and inferior information, pointing  
3266 both up and down the tree).

## 3267 **Disruptions – failure events**

3268 Failure events are modelled as “disruption”. A failure and the subsequent recovery will (or may)  
3269 cause a change of state. The disruption events in the state tables model different extents of loss of  
3270 state information. An implementation is **not** required to exhibit all the possible disruption events,  
3271 but it is not allowed to exhibit state transitions that do not correspond to a possible disruption.  
3272 The different levels of disruption describe legitimate states for the endpoint to be in after it has  
3273 been restored to normal functioning. The absence of a destination state for the disruption events  
3274 means that such a transition is not legitimate – thus, for example, an Inferior that has decided to  
3275 be prepared will always recover to the same state, by virtue of the information persisted in the  
3276 “decide to be prepared” event.

3277 In addition to the disruption events in the tables, there is an implicit “disruption 0” event, which  
3278 involves possible interruption of service and loss of messages in transit, but no change of state  
3279 (either because no state information was lost, or because recovery from persistent information  
3280 restores the implementation to the same state). The “disruption 0” event would typically be an  
3281 appropriate abstraction for a communication failure.

## 3282 **Invalid cells and assumptions of the communication mechanism**

3283 The empty cells in state table represent events that cannot happen. For events corresponding to  
3284 sending a message or any of the decision events, this prohibition is absolute – e.g. a conformant  
3285 implementation in the Superior active state “B1” will not send CONFIRM. For events  
3286 corresponding to receiving a message, the interpretation depends on the properties of the  
3287 underlying communications mechanism.

3288 For all communication mechanisms, it is assumed that

3289           a) the two directions of the Superior:Inferior communication are not synchronised –  
3290           that is messages travelling in opposite directions can cross each other to any  
3291           degree; any number of messages may be in transit in either direction; and

3292           b) messages may be lost arbitrarily

3293 If the communication mechanisms guarantee ordered delivery (i.e. that messages, if delivered at  
3294 all, are delivered to the receiver in the order they were sent) , then receipt of a message in a state  
3295 where the corresponding cell is empty indicates that the far-side has sent a message out of order –  
3296 a FAULT message with the “fault-type” “WrongState” can be returned.

3297 If the communication mechanisms cannot guarantee ordered delivery, then messages received  
3298 where the corresponding cell is empty should be ignored. Assuming the far-side is conformant,  
3299 these messages can assumed to be “stale” and have been overtaken by messages sent later but  
3300 already delivered. (If the far-side is non-conformant, there is a problem anyway).

## 3301 **Meaning of state table events**

3302 The tables in this section define the events (rows) in the state tables. Table 2 defines the events  
3303 corresponding to sending or receiving BTP messages and the disruption events. Table 3 describes  
3304 the decision events for an Inferior, Table 4 those for a Superior.

3305 The decision events for a Superior, defined in Table 4 cannot be specified without reference to  
3306 other Inferiors to which it is Superior and to its relation with the application or other entity that  
3307 (acting ultimately on behalf of the application) drives it.

3308 The term “remaining Inferiors” refers to any actors to which this endpoint is Superior and which  
3309 are to be treated as an atomic decision unit with (and thus including) the Inferior on this  
3310 relationship. If the CONTEXT for this Superior:Inferior relationship had a “superior-type” of  
3311 “atom”, this will be all Inferiors established with same Superior address and “superior-identifier”  
3312 except those from which RESIGN has been received. If the CONTEXT had “superior-type” of  
3313 “cohesion”, the “remaining Inferiors” excludes any that it has been determined will be cancelled,  
3314 as well as any that have resigned – in other words it includes only those for which a confirm  
3315 decision is still possible or has been made. The determination of exactly which Inferiors are  
3316 “remaining Inferiors” in a cohesion is determined, in some way, by the application. The term  
3317 “Other remaining Inferiors” excludes this Inferior on this relationship. A Superior with a single  
3318 Inferior will have no “other remaining Inferiors”.

3319 In order to ensure that the confirmation decision is delivered to all remaining Inferiors, despite  
3320 failures, the Superior must persistently record which these Inferiors are (i.e. their addresses and  
3321 identifiers). It must also either record that the decision is confirm, or ensure that the confirm  
3322 decision (if there is one) is persistently recorded somewhere else, and that it will be told about it.  
3323 This latter would apply if the Superior were also BTP Inferior to another entity which persisted a  
3324 confirm decision (or recursively deferred it still higher). However, since there is no requirement  
3325 that the Superior be also a BTP Inferior to any other entity, the behaviour of asking another entity  
3326 to make (and persist) the confirm decision is termed "offering confirmation" - the Superior offers  
3327 the possible confirmation of itself, and its remaining Inferiors to some other entity. If that entity  
3328 (or something higher up) then does make and persist a confirm decision, the Superior is  
3329 "instructed to confirm" (which is equivalent BTP CONFIRM).

3330 The application, or an entity acting indirectly on behalf of the application, may request a Superior  
3331 to prepare an Inferior (or all Inferiors). This typically implies that there will be no more  
3332 operations associated with the Inferior. Following a request to prepare all remaining Inferiors, the  
3333 Superior may offer confirmation to the entity that requested the prepare. (If the Superior is also a  
3334 BTP Inferior, its superior can be considered an entity acting on behalf of the application.)

3335 The application, or an entity acting indirectly on behalf of the application, may also request  
3336 confirmation. This means the Superior is to attempt to make and persist a confirm decision itself,  
3337 rather than offer confirmation.

3338 **Table 2 : send, receive and disruption events**

| Event name                     | Meaning   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| send/receive ENROL/rsp-req     | send/receive ENROL with response-requested = true   |
| send/receive ENROL/no-rsp-req  | send/receive ENROL with response-requested = false  |
| send/receive RESIGN/rsp-req    | send/receive RESIGN with response-requested = true  |
| send/receive RESIGN/no-rsp-req | send/receive RESIGN with response-requested = false |
| send/receive PREPARED          | send/receive PREPARED, with default-cancel = false  |

| Event name                      | Meaning   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| send/receive PREPARED/cancel    | send/receive PREPARED, with default-cancel = true   |
| send/receive CONFIRMED/auto     | send/receive CONFIRMED, with confirm-received = true  |
| send/receive CONFIRMED/response | send/receive CONFIRMED, with confirm-received = false   |
| send/receive HAZARD             | send/receive HAZARD   |
| send/receive INF_STATE/***/y    | send/receive INFERIOR_STATE with status *** and response-requested = true   |
| send/receive INF_STATE/***      | send/receive INFERIOR_STATE with status *** and response-requested = false  |
| send/receive SUP_STATE/***/y    | send/receive SUPERIOR_STATE with status *** and response-requested = true ("prepared-rcvd" represents "prepared-received")  |
| send/receive SUP_STATE/***      | send/receive SUPERIOR_STATE with status *** and response-requested = false ("prepared-rcvd" represents "prepared-received") |
| disruption ***                  | Loss of state– new state is state applying after any local recovery processes complete                                      |

3339

3340

**Table 3 : Decision events for Inferior**

| Event name                     | Meaning  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| decide to resign               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Any associated operations have had no effect (data state is unchanged)).</li> </ul>   |
| decide to be prepared          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Effects of all associated operations can be confirmed or cancelled;</li> <li>information to retain confirm/cancel ability has been made persistent</li> </ul> |
| decide to be prepared/cancel   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>As "decide to be prepared";</li> <li>the persistent information specifies that the default action will be to cancel</li> </ul>                                |
| decide to confirm autonomously | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Decision to confirm autonomously has been made persistent;</li> <li>the effects of associated operations will be confirmed regardless of failures</li> </ul>  |



| Event name                    | Meaning   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| decide to cancel autonomously | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Decision to cancel autonomously has been made persistent</li> <li>the effects of associated operations will be cancelled regardless of failures</li> </ul>   |
| apply ordered confirmation    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Effects of all associated operations have been confirmed;</li> <li>Persistent information is effectively removed</li> </ul>  |
| remove persistent information | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Persistent information is effectively removed;</li> </ul>  |
| detect problem                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For at least some of the associated operations, EITHER <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>they cannot be consistently cancelled or consistently confirmed; OR</li> <li>it cannot be determined whether they will be cancelled or confirmed</li> </ul> </li> <li>AND, information about this is not persistent</li> </ul> |
| detect and record problem     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>As for the first condition of "detect problem"</li> <li>information recording this has been persisted (to the degree considered appropriate), or the detection itself is persistent. (i.e. will be re-detected on recovery)</li> </ul>   |

3341

3342

**Table 4: Decision events for a Superior**

| Event name                  | Meaning  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| decide to confirm one-phase | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All associated application messages to be sent to the service have been sent;</li> <li>There are no other remaining Inferiors</li> <li>If an atom, all enrolments that would create other Inferiors have completed (no outstanding CONTEXT_REPLYS)</li> <li>The Superior has been requested to confirm</li> </ul> |
| decide to prepare           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All associated application messages to be sent to the service have been sent;</li> <li>The Superior has been requested to prepare this Inferior</li> </ul>  |
| decide to confirm           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Either <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>PREPARED or PREPARED/cancel has been received from all other remaining Inferiors; AND</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  |

| Event name                 | Meaning  |
|----------------------------|--|
|                            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Superior has been requested to confirm; AND</li> <li>o persistent information records the confirm decision and identifies all remaining Inferiors;</li> <li>• Or</li> <li>o persistent information records an offer of confirmation and has been instructed to confirm</li> </ul> |
| decide to cancel           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Superior has not offered confirmation; OR</li> <li>• Superior has offered confirmation and has been instructed to cancel; OR</li> <li>• Superior has offered confirmation but has made an autonomous cancellation decision</li> </ul>   |
| remove confirm information | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Persistent information has been effectively removed;</li> </ul>   |
| record contradiction       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Information recording the contradiction has been persisted (to the degree considered appropriate)</li> </ul>  |

3343

#### 3344 Persistent information

3345 Persisted information (especially prepared information at an Inferior, confirm information at a  
3346 Superior) may include qualifications of the state carried in Qualifiers of the corresponding  
3347 message (e.g. inferior timeouts in prepared information). It may also include application-specific  
3348 information (especially in Inferiors) to allow the future confirmation or cancellation of the  
3349 associated operations. In some cases it will also include information allowing an application  
3350 message sent with a BTP message (e.g. PREPARED) to be repeated.

3351 The “effective” removal of persistent information allows for the possibility that the information is  
3352 retained (perhaps for audit and tracing purposes) but some change to the persistent information  
3353 (as a whole) means that if there is a failure after such change, on recovery, the persistent  
3354 information does not cause the endpoint to return the state it would have recovered to before the  
3355 change.

3356 In all cases, the degree to which information described as “persistent” will survive failure is a  
3357 configuration and implementation option. An implementation **should** describe the level of failure  
3358 that it is capable of surviving. For applications manipulating information that is itself volatile (e.g.  
3359 network configurations), there is no requirement to make the BTP state information more  
3360 persistent than the application information.

3361 The degree of persistence of the recording of a hazard (problem) at an Inferior and recording of a  
3362 detected contradiction at a Superior may be different from that applying to the persistent prepared  
3363 and confirm information. Implementations and configuration may choose to pass hazard and  
3364 contradiction information via management mechanisms rather than through BTP. Such passing of  
3365 information to a management mechanism could be treated as “record problem” or “record  
3366 contradiction”.

**Table 5 : Superior states**

| State              | summary  |
|--------------------|--|
| I1                 | CONTEXT created                                  |
| A1                 | ENROLing   |
| B1                 | ENROLLED (active)                                |
| <a href="#">B2</a> | <a href="#">ENROLLED – repeat ENROL received</a> |
| C1                 | resigning  |
| D1                 | PREPARE sent                                     |
| E1                 | PREPARED received                                |
| E2                 | PREPARED/cancel received                         |
| F1                 | CONFIRM sent                                     |
| F2                 | completed after confirm                          |
| G1                 | cancel decided                                   |
| G2                 | CANCEL sent                                      |
| G3                 | cancelling, RESIGN received                      |
| G4                 | both cancelled                                   |
| H1                 | inferior autonomously confirmed                  |
| J1                 | Inferior autonomously cancelled                  |
| K1                 | confirmed, contradiction detected                |
| L1                 | cancelled, contradiction detected                |
| P1                 | hazard reported                                  |
| P2                 | hazard reported in null state                    |
| P3                 | hazard reported after confirm decision           |
| P4                 | hazard reported after cancel decision            |
| Q1                 | contradiction detected in null state             |
| R1                 | Contradiction or hazard recorded                 |
| R2                 | completed after contradiction or hazard recorded |
| S1                 | one-phase confirm decided                        |
| Y1                 | completed queried                                |
| Z                  | completed and unknown                            |

**Table 6 : Inferior states**

| State | summary  |
|-------|--|
| i1    | aware of CONTEXT                                 |
| a1    | enrolling  |
| b1    | enrolled   |
| c1    | resigning  |
| d1    | preparing  |
| e1    | prepared   |
| e2    | prepared,default to cancel                       |
| f1    | confirming                                       |
| f2    | confirming after default cancel                  |
| g1    | CANCEL received in prepared state                |
| g2    | CANCEL received in prepared/cancel state         |
| h1    | Autonomously confirmed                           |
| h2    | autonomously confirmed, superior confirmed       |
| j1    | autonomously cancelled                           |
| j2    | autonomously cancelled, superior cancelled       |
| k1    | autonomously cancelled, contradicted             |
| k2    | autonomously cancelled, CONTRADICTION received   |
| l1    | autonomously confirmed, contradicted             |
| l2    | autonomously confirmed, CONTRADICTION received   |
| m1    | confirmation applied                             |
| n1    | cancelling                                       |
| p1    | hazard detected, not recorded                    |
| p2    | hazard detected in prepared state, not recorded  |
| q1    | hazard recorded                                  |
| s1    | CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received after prepared state  |
| s2    | CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received                       |
| s3    | CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received, confirming           |
| s4    | CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received, cancelling           |
| s5    | CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received, hazard detected      |
| s6    | CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received, hazard recorded      |
| x1    | completed, presuming abort                       |
| x2    | completed, presuming abort after prepared/cancel |
| y1    | completed, queried                               |

| State | summary                                       |
|-------|---|
| y2    | completed, default cancel, a message received |
| z     | completed                                     |
| z1    | completed with default cancel                 |

3370

3371 Superior state table

3372 Table 7: Superior state table – normal forward progression

|                                  | I 1 | A 1 | B 1 | B 2 | C 1 | D 1 | E 1 | E 2 | F 1 | F 2 |
|----------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| recei ve ENROL/rsp-req           | A1  | A1  | B2  | B2  |     | D1  |     |     |     |     |
| recei ve ENROL/no-rsp-req        | B1  |     | B1  | B1  |     | D1  |     |     |     |     |
| recei ve RESI GN/rsp-req         | Y1  |     | C1  | C1  | C1  | C1  |     |     |     |     |
| recei ve RESI GN/no-rsp-req      | Z   |     | Z   | Z   | Z   | Z   |     |     |     |     |
| recei ve PREPARED                | Y1  |     | E1  | E1  |     | E1  | E1  |     | F1  |     |
| recei ve PREPARED/cancel         | Y1  |     | E2  | E2  |     | E2  |     | E2  | F1  |     |
| recei ve CONFIR MED/auto         | Q1  |     | H1  | H1  |     | H1  | H1  |     | F1  |     |
| recei ve CONFIR MED/response     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     | F2  | F2  |
| recei ve CANCELLED               | Y1  |     | Z   | Z   |     | Z   | J1  | J1  | K1  |     |
| recei ve HAZARD                  | P1  | P1  | P1  | P1  |     | P1  | P1  | P1  | P3  |     |
| recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve/y     | Y1  | A1  | B1  | B2  |     | D1  |     |     |     |     |
| recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve       |     |     | B1  | B2  |     | D1  |     |     |     |     |
| recei ve INF_STATE/unknown       |     |     | Z   | Z   | Z   | Z   |     |     |     |     |
| send ENROLLED                    |     | B1  |     | B1  |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| send RESI GNED                   |     |     |     |     | Z   |     |     |     |     |     |
| send PREPARE                     |     |     |     |     |     | D1  | E1  | E2  |     |     |
| send CONFIR M_ONE_PHASE          |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| send CONFIR M                    |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     | F1  |     |
| send CANCEL                      |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| send CONTRADI CTI ON             |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| send SUP_STATE/acti ve/y         |     |     | B1  |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| send SUP_STATE/acti ve           |     |     | B1  |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y   |     |     |     |     |     |     | E1  | E2  |     |     |
| send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd     |     |     |     |     |     |     | E1  | E2  |     |     |
| send SUP_STATE/unknown           |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| deci de to confi rm one-phase    |     |     | S1  | S1  |     |     | S1  | S1  |     |     |
| deci de to prepare               |     |     | D1  | D1  |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| deci de to confi rm              |     |     |     |     |     |     | F1  | F1  |     |     |
| deci de to cancel                |     |     | G1  | G1  |     | G1  | G1  | Z   |     |     |
| remove persi stent i nformati on |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     | Z   |
| record contradi cti on           |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
| di srupti on I                   | Z   | Z   | Z   | Z   | B1  | Z   | Z   | Z   |     | F1  |
| di srupti on II                  |     |     |     |     | Z   |     | D1  | D1  |     |     |
| di srupti on III                 |     |     |     |     |     |     | B1  | B1  |     |     |
| di srupti on IV                  |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |

3373

3374

**Table 8: Superior state table – cancellation and contradiction**

|                                  | G1 | G2 | G3 | G4 | H1 | J1 | K1 | L1 |
|----------------------------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| recei ve ENROL/rsp-req           | G1 | G2 |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| recei ve ENROL/no-rsp-req        | G1 | G2 |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| recei ve RESI GN/rsp-req         | G3 | Z  | G3 |    |    |    |    |    |
| recei ve RESI GN/no-rsp-req      | Z  | Z  | Z  |    |    |    |    |    |
| recei ve PREPARED                | G1 | G2 |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| recei ve PREPARED/cancel         | G1 | G2 |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| recei ve CONFIR MED/auto         | L1 | L1 |    |    | H1 |    |    | L1 |
| recei ve CONFIR MED/response     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| recei ve CANCELLED               | G4 | Z  |    | G4 |    | J1 | K1 |    |
| recei ve HAZARD                  | P4 | P4 |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve/y     | G1 | G2 |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve       | G1 | G2 |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| recei ve INF_STATE/unknown       | Z  | Z  | Z  | Z  |    |    |    |    |
| send ENROLLED                    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| send RESI GNED                   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| send PREPARE                     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| send CONFIR M_ONE_PHASE          |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| send CONFIR M                    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| send CANCEL                      | G2 | G2 | Z  | Z  |    |    |    |    |
| send CONTRADI CTI ON             |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| send SUP_STATE/acti ve/y         |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| send SUP_STATE/acti ve           |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| send SUP_STATE/unknown           |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| deci de to confi rm one-phase    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| deci de to prepare               |    |    |    |    | F1 | K1 |    |    |
| deci de to confi rm              |    |    |    |    | L1 | G4 |    |    |
| deci de to cancel                |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| remove persi stent i nformati on |    |    |    |    |    |    | R1 | R1 |
| record contradi cti on           |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| di srupti on I                   | Z  | Z  | Z  | Z  | Z  | Z  | F1 | Z  |
| di srupti on II                  |    |    | G2 | G2 | E1 | E1 |    | G2 |
| di srupti on III                 |    |    |    |    | D1 | D1 |    |    |
| di srupti on IV                  |    |    |    |    | B1 | B1 |    |    |

3375

3376

**Table 9: Superior state table – hazard and request confirm**

|                                  | P1 | P2 | P3 | P4 | Q1 | R1 | R2        | S1 |
|----------------------------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----------|----|
| recei ve ENROL/rsp-req           |    |    |    |    |    |    |           | S1 |
| recei ve ENROL/no-rsp-req        |    |    |    |    |    |    |           | S1 |
| recei ve RESI GN/rsp-req         |    |    |    |    |    |    |           | Z  |
| recei ve RESI GN/no-rsp-req      |    |    |    |    |    |    |           | Z  |
| recei ve PREPARED                |    |    |    |    |    |    |           | S1 |
| recei ve PREPARED/cancel         |    |    |    |    |    |    |           | S1 |
| recei ve CONFIR MED/auto         |    |    |    |    | Q1 | R1 | R1        | S1 |
| recei ve CONFIR MED/response     |    |    |    |    | Z  | R2 | <u>R2</u> | Z  |
| recei ve CANCELLED               |    |    |    |    |    | R1 | R1        | Z  |
| recei ve HAZARD                  | P1 | P2 | P3 | P4 |    | R1 | R1        | Z  |
| recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve/y     |    |    |    |    |    |    |           | S1 |
| recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve       |    |    |    |    |    |    |           | S1 |
| recei ve INF_STATE/unknown       | P1 | P2 |    | P4 |    | R2 | R2        | Z  |
| send ENROLLED                    |    |    |    |    |    |    |           |    |
| send RESI GNED                   |    |    |    |    |    |    |           |    |
| send PREPARE                     |    |    |    |    |    |    |           |    |
| send CONFIR M_ONE_PHASE          |    |    |    |    |    |    |           | S1 |
| send CONFIR M                    |    |    |    |    |    |    |           |    |
| send CANCEL                      |    |    |    |    |    |    |           |    |
| send CONTRADI CTI ON             |    |    |    |    |    | R2 |           |    |
| send SUP_STATE/acti ve/y         |    |    |    |    |    |    |           |    |
| send SUP_STATE/acti ve           |    |    |    |    |    |    |           |    |
| send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y   |    |    |    |    |    |    |           |    |
| send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd     |    |    |    |    |    |    |           |    |
| send SUP_STATE/unknown           |    |    |    |    |    |    |           |    |
| deci de to confi rm one-phase    |    |    |    |    |    |    |           |    |
| deci de to prepare               |    |    |    |    |    |    |           |    |
| deci de to confi rm              |    |    |    |    |    |    |           |    |
| deci de to cancel                |    |    |    |    |    |    |           |    |
| remove persi stent i nformati on |    |    |    |    |    |    | Z         |    |
| record contradi cti on           | R1 | R1 | R1 | R1 | R1 |    |           |    |
| di srupti on I                   | Z  | Z  | Z  | Z  | Z  |    | R1        | Z  |
| di srupti on II                  | D1 |    | F1 | G2 |    |    |           |    |
| di srupti on III                 | B1 |    |    |    |    |    |           |    |
| di srupti on IV                  |    |    |    |    |    |    |           |    |

3377

3378



3378

**Table 10: Superior state table – query after completion and completed states**

|                                  | Y1 | Z  |
|----------------------------------|----|----|
| recei ve ENROL/rsp-req           | Y1 | Y1 |
| recei ve ENROL/no-rsp-req        | Y1 | Y1 |
| recei ve RESI GN/rsp-req         | Y1 | Y1 |
| recei ve RESI GN/no-rsp-req      | Z  | Z  |
| recei ve PREPARED                | Y1 | Y1 |
| recei ve PREPARED/cancel         | Y1 | Y1 |
| recei ve CONFIR MED/auto         | Q1 | Q1 |
| recei ve CONFIR MED/response     | Z  | Z  |
| recei ve CANCELLED               | Y1 | Y1 |
| recei ve HAZARD                  | P2 | P2 |
| recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve/y     | Y1 | Y1 |
| recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve       | Y1 | Z  |
| recei ve INF_STATE/unknown       | Z  | Z  |
| send ENROLLED                    |    |    |
| send RESI GNED                   |    |    |
| send PREPARE                     |    |    |
| send CONFIR M_ONE_PHASE          |    |    |
| send CONFIR M                    |    |    |
| send CANCEL                      |    |    |
| send CONTRADI CTI ON             |    |    |
| send SUP_STATE/acti ve/y         |    |    |
| send SUP_STATE/acti ve           |    |    |
| send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y   |    |    |
| send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd     |    |    |
| send SUP_STATE/unknown           | Z  |    |
| deci de to confi rm one-phase    |    |    |
| deci de to prepare               |    |    |
| deci de to confi rm              |    |    |
| deci de to cancel                |    |    |
| remove persi stent i nformati on |    |    |
| record contradi cti on           |    |    |
| di srupti on I                   | Z  |    |
| di srupti on II                  |    |    |
| di srupti on III                 |    |    |
| di srupti on IV                  |    |    |

3379

3380

3380 Inferior state table

3381 Table 11: Inferior state table – normal forward progression

|                                    | i 1 | a1 | b1 | c1 | d1 | e1  | e2 | f1 | f2 |
|------------------------------------|-----|----|----|----|----|-----|----|----|----|
| send ENROL/rsp-req                 | a1  | a1 |    |    |    |     |    |    |    |
| send ENROL/no-rsp-req              | b1  |    | b1 |    |    |     |    |    |    |
| send RESI GN/rsp-req               |     |    |    | c1 |    |     |    |    |    |
| send RESI GN/no-rsp-req            |     |    |    | z  |    |     |    |    |    |
| send PREPARED                      |     |    |    |    |    | e1  |    |    |    |
| send PREPARED/cancel               |     |    |    |    |    |     | e2 |    |    |
| send CONFIR MED/auto               |     |    |    |    |    |     |    |    |    |
| send CONFIR MED/response           |     |    |    |    |    |     |    |    |    |
| send CANCELLED                     |     |    | z  |    | z  |     |    |    |    |
| send HAZARD                        |     |    |    |    |    |     |    |    |    |
| send INF_STATE/active/y            |     | a1 | b1 |    | d1 |     |    |    |    |
| send INF_STATE/active              |     |    | b1 |    | d1 |     |    |    |    |
| send INF_STATE/unknown             |     |    |    |    |    |     |    |    |    |
| recei ve ENROLLED                  |     | b1 | b1 | c1 |    | e1  | e2 |    |    |
| recei ve RESI GNED                 |     |    |    | z  |    |     |    |    |    |
| recei ve PREPARE                   |     | d1 | d1 | c1 | d1 | e1  | e2 |    |    |
| recei ve CONFIR M_ONE_PHASE        |     | s2 | s2 | z  |    | s1  | s1 |    |    |
| recei ve CONFIR M                  |     |    |    |    |    | f1  | f2 | f1 | f2 |
| recei ve CANCEL                    |     | n1 | n1 | z  | n1 | g1  | g2 |    |    |
| recei ve CONTRADI CTI ON           |     |    |    |    |    |     |    |    |    |
| recei ve SUP_STATE/active/y        |     | b1 | b1 | c1 |    | e1  | e2 |    |    |
| recei ve SUP_STATE/active          |     | b1 | b1 | c1 |    | e1  | e2 |    |    |
| recei ve SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y |     |    |    |    |    | e1  | e2 |    |    |
| recei ve SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd   |     |    |    |    |    | e1  | e2 |    |    |
| recei ve SUP_STATE/unknown         |     | z  | z  | z  | z  | x1  | x2 |    |    |
| deci de to resi gn                 |     |    | c1 |    | c1 |     |    |    |    |
| deci de to be prepared             |     |    | e1 |    | e1 |     |    |    |    |
| deci de to be prepared/cancel      |     |    | e2 |    | e2 |     |    |    |    |
| deci de to confi rm autonomously   |     |    |    |    |    | h1  |    |    |    |
| deci de to cancel autonomously     |     |    |    |    |    | j 1 | z1 |    |    |
| apply ordered confi rmation        |     |    |    |    |    |     |    | m1 | m1 |
| remove persi stent i nformati on   |     |    |    |    |    |     |    |    |    |
| detect probl em                    |     | p1 | p1 |    | p1 | p2  | p2 | p2 | p2 |
| detect and record probl em         |     |    |    |    |    |     |    |    |    |
| di srupti on I                     |     | z  | z  | z  | z  |     |    | e1 | e2 |
| di srupti on II                    |     |    |    |    | b1 |     |    |    |    |
| di srupti on III                   |     |    |    |    |    |     |    |    |    |

3382

3383

**Table 12: Inferior state table – cancellation and contradiction**

|  | g1 | g2 | h1                   | h2 | j1                   | j2 | k1       | k2       | l1       | l2       |
|--|----|----|----------------------|----|----------------------|----|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| send ENROL/rsp-req<br>send ENROL/no-rsp-req<br>send RESIGN/rsp-req<br>send RESIGN/no-rsp-req<br>send PREPARED<br>send PREPARED/cancel<br>send CONFIRMED/auto<br>send CONFIRMED/response<br>send CANCELLED<br>send HAZARD                                   |    |    | h1                   |    | j1                   |    | k1       |          | l1       |          |
| send INF_STATE/active/y<br>send INF_STATE/active<br>send INF_STATE/unknown   |    |    |                      |    |                      |    |          |          |          |          |
| receive ENROLLED<br>receive RESIGNED<br>receive PREPARE<br>receive CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE<br>receive CONFIRM<br>receive CANCEL<br>receive CONTRADICTION   | g1 | g2 | h1<br>h1<br>h2       | h2 | j1<br>j1<br>k1       | j2 | k1<br>k2 | k2       | l1<br>l2 | l2       |
| receive SUP_STATE/active/y<br>receive SUP_STATE/active<br>receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y<br>receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd<br>receive SUP_STATE/unknown  | x1 | x2 | h1<br>h1<br>h1<br>h1 |    | j1<br>j1<br>j1<br>j1 | j2 | k2       | k2       | l1       |          |
| decide to resign<br>decide to be prepared<br>decide to be prepared/cancel<br>decide to confirm autonomously<br>decide to cancel autonomously<br>apply ordered confirmation<br>remove persistent information<br>detect problem<br>detect and record problem | n1 | n1 |                      | m1 |                      | z  |          | z        |          | z        |
| disruption I<br>disruption II<br>disruption III  | e1 | e2 |                      | h1 |                      | j1 | j1       | k1<br>j1 | h1       | l1<br>h1 |

**Table 13: Inferior state table – confirm, cancel ordered and hazard recording**

|   | m1 | n1            | p1                         | p2                         | q1                         |
|---|----|---------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| send ENROL/rsp-req<br>send ENROL/no-rsp-req<br>send RESI GN/rsp-req<br>send RESI GN/no-rsp-req<br>send PREPARED<br>send PREPARED/cancel<br>send CONFIR MED/auto<br>send CONFIR MED/response<br>send CANCELLED<br>send HAZARD  | z  | z             | p1                         | p2                         | q1                         |
| send INF_STATE/active/y<br>send INF_STATE/active<br>send INF_STATE/unknown  |    |               |                            |                            |                            |
| recei ve ENROLLED<br>recei ve RESI GNED<br>recei ve PREPARE<br>recei ve CONFIR M_ONE_PHASE<br>recei ve CONFIR M<br>recei ve CANCEL<br>recei ve CONTRADI CTI ON  | m1 | n1            | p1<br>s5<br>z              | p2<br>s5<br>z              | q1<br>s6<br>q1<br>q1<br>z  |
| recei ve SUP_STATE/active/y<br>recei ve SUP_STATE/active<br>recei ve SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y<br>recei ve SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd<br>recei ve SUP_STATE/unknown  |    | z             | p1<br>p1<br>p2<br>p2<br>p1 | p2<br>p2<br>p2<br>p2<br>p2 | q1<br>q1<br>q1<br>q1<br>q1 |
| deci de to resi gn<br>deci de to be prepared<br>deci de to be prepared/cancel<br>deci de to confi rm autonomously<br>deci de to cancel autonomously<br>appl y ordered confi rmati on<br>remove persi stent i nformati on<br>detect probl em<br>detect and record probl em |    |               |                            |                            | q1 q1                      |
| di srupti on I<br>di srupti on II<br>di srupti on III   | z  | z<br>d1<br>b1 | z                          |                            |                            |

**Table 14: Inferior state table – request confirm states**

|   | s1 | s2 | s3       | s4 | s5 | s6 |
|---|----|----|----------|----|----|----|
| send ENROL/rsp-req<br>send ENROL/no-rsp-req<br>send RESI GN/rsp-req<br>send RESI GN/no-rsp-req<br>send PREPARED<br>send PREPARED/cancel<br>send CONFIR MED/auto<br>send CONFIR MED/response<br>send CANCELLED<br>send HAZARD  |    |    | z        | z  | z  | z  |
| send INF_STATE/active/y<br>send INF_STATE/active<br>send INF_STATE/unknown  |    |    |          |    |    |    |
| recei ve ENROLLED<br>recei ve RESI GNED<br>recei ve PREPARE<br>recei ve CONFIR M_ONE_PHASE<br>recei ve CONFIR M<br>recei ve CANCEL<br>recei ve CONTRADI CTI ON  | s1 | s2 | s3       | s4 | s5 | s6 |
| recei ve SUP_STATE/active/y<br>recei ve SUP_STATE/active<br>recei ve SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y<br>recei ve SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd<br>recei ve SUP_STATE/unknown  | x1 | z  | z        | z  | z  | z  |
| deci de to resi gn<br>deci de to be prepared<br>deci de to be prepared/cancel<br>deci de to confi rm autonomously<br>deci de to cancel autonomously<br>appl y ordered confi rmati on<br>remove persi stent i nformati on<br>detect probl em<br>detect and record probl em | s2 |    | s3<br>s4 |    |    | s6 |
| di srupti on I<br>di srupti on II<br>di srupti on III   | e1 | z  |          | z  | z  |    |

3389

**Table 15: Inferior state table – completed states (including presume-abort and queried)**

|  | x1 | x2 | y1                                    | y2                                 | z                                   | z1  |
|--|----|----|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| send ENROL/rsp-req<br>send ENROL/no-rsp-req<br>send RESIGN/rsp-req<br>send RESIGN/no-rsp-req<br>send PREPARED<br>send PREPARED/cancel<br>send CONFIRMED/auto<br>send CONFIRMED/response<br>send CANCELLED<br>send HAZARD                                   |    |    |                                       |                                    |                                     | z1  |
| send INF_STATE/active/y<br>send INF_STATE/active<br>send INF_STATE/unknown   |    |    | z                                     |                                    |                                     |   |
| receive ENROLLED<br>receive RESIGNED<br>receive PREPARE<br>receive CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE<br>receive CONFIRM<br>receive CANCEL<br>receive CONTRADICTION   |    |    | y1<br>y1<br>y1<br>y1<br>y1<br>y1<br>z | y2<br><br>y2<br>y2<br>y2<br>z<br>z | z<br>z<br>y1<br>y1<br>m1<br>y1<br>z | z1<br><br>z1<br>y1<br>y2<br>y2<br>y1<br>z |
| receive SUP_STATE/active/y<br>receive SUP_STATE/active<br>receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y<br>receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd<br>receive SUP_STATE/unknown  |    |    | y1<br>y1<br><br>y1                    | y2<br>y2<br>y2<br>y2               | y1<br>z<br><br>y2                   | y2<br>z1<br>y2<br>y2<br>z                 |
| decide to resign<br>decide to be prepared<br>decide to be prepared/cancel<br>decide to confirm autonomously<br>decide to cancel autonomously<br>apply ordered confirmation<br>remove persistent information<br>detect problem<br>detect and record problem |    |    |                                       |                                    |                                     |   |
| disruption I<br>disruption II<br>disruption III  | e1 | e2 |                                       |                                    |                                     |   |

3390

3391

## 3391 **Persistent information**

3392 The BTP recovery mechanisms require that information is persisted by the BTP actors that  
3393 perform the Superior and Inferior roles. To ensure consistent application of the outcome, despite  
3394 failures, the Inferior must persist some state information at the point of becoming prepared, and  
3395 the Superior at the point of making a confirm decision. If the Superior is a Sub-coordinator or  
3396 Sub-composer, it must persist information when, as an Inferior it becomes prepared. The  
3397 minimum information to be persisted is the identifiers and addresses of the peer Inferiors and  
3398 Superior – the fact of the persistence being itself an indication of the preparedness or confirm  
3399 decision. However, BTP allows recovery of a Superior:Inferior relationship to occur in other  
3400 cases – during the active phase, and before a confirm decision has been made. Thus, in general,  
3401 the BTP actors will need to persist the current state of the relationships.

3402 Since BTP messages may carry application-specified qualifiers, which may need to be re-sent in  
3403 the case of failure (because the first attempt got lost). BTP actors should be prepared to persist  
3404 such qualifiers as well.

3405 A Participant will normally also need to persist some information concerning the application  
3406 work whose final or counter effect it is responsible for. The nature of this information is not  
3407 considered further in this specification.

3408 Information to be persisted for an Inferior’s “decision to be prepared” must be sufficient to re-  
3409 establish communication with the Superior, to apply a confirm decision and to apply a cancel  
3410 decision. It will thus need to include

3411 “superior-address”(as on CONTEXT as updated by REDIRECT)

3412 “superior-identifier” (as on CONTEXT)

3413 “default-is-cancel” value (as on PREPARED)

3414 A Superior must record corresponding information to allow it to re-establish communication with  
3415 the Inferior. Thus, for each Inferior

3416 “inferior-address” (as on ENROL, as updated by REDIRECT)

3417 “inferior-identifier” (as on ENROL)

3418 In order to recover their own function, both Superior and Inferior will need to persist their own  
3419 Identifier (“superior-identifier” and “inferior-identifier”) and, depending on the implementation,  
3420 may need to persist their original “superior-address” or “inferior-address”.

## 3421 **XML representation of Message Set**

3422 This section describes the syntax for BTP messages in XML. These XML messages represent a  
3423 midpoint between the abstract messages and what actually gets sent on the wire.

3424 All BTP related URIs have been created using Oasis URI conventions as specified in [RFC 3121](#)

3425 The XML Namespace for the BTP messages is urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core

3426 In addition to an XML schema, this specification uses an informal syntax to describe the structure  
3427 of the BTP messages. The syntax appears as an XML instance, but the values contain data types  
3428 instead of values. The following symbols are appended to some of the XML constructs: ? (zero  
3429 or one), \* (zero or more), + (one or more.) The absence of one of these symbols corresponds to  
3430 "one and only one."

3431 The Delivery parameters are shown in the XML with a darker background.

## 3432 Addresses

3433 As described in the “Abstract Message and Associated Contracts – Addresses” section, a BTP  
3434 address comprises three parts, and for a “target-address” only the “additional information” field is  
3435 inside the BTP messages. For all BTP messages whose abstract form includes a “target-address”  
3436 parameter, the corresponding XML representation includes a “target-additional-information”  
3437 element. This element may be omitted if it would be empty.

3438 For other addresses, all three fields are represent, as in:

```
3439 <btp:some-address>  
3440   <btp:binding-name>...carrier binding URIname...</btp:binding-  
3441   name>  
3442   <btp:binding-address>...carrier specific  
3443   address...</btp:binding-address>  
3444   <btp:additional-information>...optional additional addressing  
3445   information...</btp:additional-information> ?  
3446 </btp:some-address>  
3447
```

3448 A "published" address can be a set of <some-address>, which are alternatives which can be  
3449 chosen by the peer (sender.) Multiple addresses are used in two cases: different bindings to same  
3450 endpoint, or backup endpoints. In the former, the receiver of the message has the choice of which  
3451 address to use (depending on which binding is preferable.) In the case where multiple addresses  
3452 are used for redundancy, a priority attribute can be specified to help the receiver choose among  
3453 the addresses- the address with the highest priority should be used, other things being equal. The  
3454 priority is used as a hint and does not enforce any behaviour in the receiver of the message.  
3455 Default priority is a value of 1.

## 3456 Qualifiers

3457 The “Qualifier name” is used as the element name, within the namespace of the “Qualifier  
3458 group”.

### 3459 Examples:

```
3460 <btpq:inferior-timeout  
3461   xmlns:btpq="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:qualifiers"  
3462   xmlns:btp="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core"  
3463   btp:must-be-understood="false"  
3464   btp:to-be-propagated="false">1800</btpq:inferior-timeout>  
3465 <auth:username  
3466   xmlns:auth="http://www.example.com/ns/auth"
```



```

3467     xmlns:btp="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core"
3468     btp:must-be-understood="true"
3469     btp:to-be-propagated="true">jtauber</auth:username>
3470

```

3471 Attributes must-be-understood **has default value “true”** and to-be-propagated has default value  
3472 “false”.

## 3473 Identifiers

3474 Identifiers shall be URIs "

3475 *Note – Identifiers need to be globally unambiguous. Apart from their generation, .the*  
3476 *only operation the BTP implementations have to perform on identifiers is to match*  
3477 *them.*

## 3478 Message References

3479 Each BTP message has an optional id attribute to give it a unique identifier. An application can  
3480 make use of those identifiers, but no processing is enforced.

## 3481 Messages

### 3482 CONTEXT

```

3483 <btp:context id?>
3484   <btp:superior-address> +
3485     ...address...
3486   </btp:superior-address>
3487   <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
3488   <btp:superior-type>cohesion|atom</btp:superior-type>
3489   <btp:qualifiers> ?
3490     ...qualifiers...
3491   </btp:qualifiers>
3492   <btp:reply-address> ?
3493     ...address...
3494   </btp:reply-address>
3495 </btp:context>

```

### 3496 CONTEXT\_REPLY

```

3497 <btp:context-reply id?>
3498   <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
3499   <btp:completion-
3500 status>completed|incomplete|related|repudiated</btp:completion-
3501 status>
3502   <btp:qualifiers> ?
3503     ...qualifiers...
3504   </btp:qualifiers>
3505   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3506     ...additional address information...
3507   </btp:target-additional-information>
3508 </btp:context-reply>

```

## 3509 REQUEST\_STATUS

```
3510 <btp:request-status id?>
3511   <btp:target-identifier>...URI...</btp:target-identifier>
3512   <btp:qualifiers> ?
3513     ...qualifiers...
3514 </btp:qualifiers>
3515   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3516     ...additional address information...
3517 </btp:target-additional-information>
3518   <btp:reply-address> ?
3519     ...address...
3520 </btp:reply-address>
3521 </btp:request-status>
```

## 3522 STATUS

```
3523 <btp:status id?>
3524   <btp:responders-identifier>...URI...</btp:responders-identifier>
3525   <btp:status-value>created|enrolling|active|resigning|
3526     resigned|preparing|prepared|
3527     confirming|confirmed|cancelling|cancelled|
3528     cancel-contradiction|confirm-contradiction|
3529     hazard|contradicted|unknown|inaccessible</btp:status-
3530 value>
3531   <btp:qualifiers> ?
3532     ...qualifiers...
3533 </btp:qualifiers>
3534   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3535     ...additional address information...
3536 </btp:target-additional-information>
3537 </btp:status>
```

## 3538 FAULT

```
3539 <btp:fault id?>
3540   <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier> ?
3541   <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier> ?
3542   <btp:fault-type>...fault type name...</btp:fault-type>
3543   <btp:fault-data>...fault data...</btp:fault-data> ?
3544   <btp:fault-text>...string data ...</btp:fault-data> ?
3545   <btp:qualifiers> ?
3546     ...qualifiers...
3547 </btp:qualifiers>
3548   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3549     ...additional address information...
3550 </btp:target-additional-information>
3551 </btp:fault>
3552
```

3553 The following fault type names are represented by simple strings, corresponding to the entries  
3554 defined in the abstract message set:

- 3555           • communication-failure
- 3556           • duplicate-inferior
- 3557           • general
- 3558           • invalid-decider
- 3559           • invalid-inferior
- 3560           • invalid-superior
- 3561           • status-refused
- 3562           • invalid-terminator
- 3563           • unknown-parameter
- 3564           • unknown-transaction
- 3565           • unsupported-qualifier
- 3566           • wrong-state
- 3567           • redirect
- 3568

3569       Revisions of this specification may add other fault type names, which shall be simple strings of  
 3570       letters, numbers and hyphens. If other specifications define fault type names to be used with BTP,  
 3571       the names shall be URIs.

3572       Fault data can take on various forms:

3573       Identifier:

```
3574           <btp: fault-data>...URI...</btp: fault-data>
```

3576       Inferior Identity:

```
3577           <btp: fault-data>
3578            <btp: inferior-address> +
3579            ...address...
3580           </btp: inferior-address>
3581           <btp: inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp: inferior-identifier>
3582           </btp: fault-data>
```

3584       **ENROL**

```
3585           <btp: enrol id?>
3586            <btp: superior-identifier>...URI...</btp: superior-identifier>
3587            <btp: response-requested>true| false</btp: response-requested>
3588            <btp: inferior-address> +
3589            ...address...
3590            </btp: inferior-address>
3591            <btp: inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp: inferior-identifier>
3592            <btp: qualifiers> ?
3593            ...qualifiers...
```

```
3594 </btp:qualifiers>
3595 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3596   ...additional address information...
3597 </btp:target-additional-information>
3598 <btp:reply-address> ?
3599   ...address...
3600 </btp:reply-address>
3601 </btp:enrol>
```

## 3602 ENROLLED

```
3603 <btp:enrolled id?>
3604   <btp:sender-address> ?
3605     ...address...
3606 </btp:sender-address>
3607 <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
3608 <btp:qualifiers> ?
3609   ...qualifiers...
3610 </btp:qualifiers>
3611 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3612   ...additional address information...
3613 </btp:target-additional-information>
3614 </btp:enrolled>
```

## 3615 RESIGN

```
3616 <btp:resign id?>
3617   <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
3618   <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
3619   <btp:response-requested>true|false</btp:response-requested>
3620   <btp:qualifiers> ?
3621     ...qualifiers...
3622 </btp:qualifiers>
3623 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3624   ...additional address information...
3625 </btp:target-additional-information>
3626 <btp:sender-address> ?
3627   ...address...
3628 </btp:sender-address>
3629 </btp:resign>
```

## 3630 RESIGNED

```
3631 <btp:resigned id?>
3632   <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
3633   <btp:qualifiers> ?
3634     ...qualifiers...
3635 </btp:qualifiers>
3636 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3637   ...additional address information...
3638 </btp:target-additional-information>
3639 <btp:sender-address> ?
3640   ...address...
3641 </btp:sender-address>
```

3642 </btp:resigned>

### 3643 PREPARE

```
3644 <btp:prepare id?>
3645 <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
3646 <btp:qualifiers> ?
3647 ...qualifiers...
3648 </btp:qualifiers>
3649 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3650 ...additional address information...
3651 </btp:target-additional-information>
3652 <btp:sender-address> ?
3653 ...address...
3654 </btp:sender-address>
3655 </btp:prepare>
```

### 3656 PREPARED

```
3657 <btp:prepared id?>
3658 <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
3659 <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
3660 <btp:default-is-cancel>true|false</btp:default-is-cancel>
3661 <btp:qualifiers> ?
3662 ...qualifiers...
3663 </btp:qualifiers>
3664 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3665 ...additional address information...
3666 </btp:target-additional-information>
3667 <btp:sender-address> ?
3668 ...address...
3669 </btp:sender-address>
3670 </btp:prepared>
```

### 3671 CONFIRM

```
3672 <btp:confirm id?>
3673 <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
3674 <btp:qualifiers> ?
3675 ...qualifiers...
3676 </btp:qualifiers>
3677 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3678 ...additional address information...
3679 </btp:target-additional-information>
3680 <btp:sender-address> ?
3681 ...address...
3682 </btp:sender-address>
3683 </btp:confirm>
```

### 3684 CONFIRMED

```
3685 <btp:confirmed id?>
3686 <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
3687 <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
```

```
3688 <btpr:confirmed-received>true|false</btpr:confirmed-received>
3689 <btpr:qualifiers> ?
3690 ...qualifiers...
3691 </btpr:qualifiers>
3692 <btpr:target-additional-information> ?
3693 ...additional address information...
3694 </btpr:target-additional-information>
3695 <btpr:sender-address> ?
3696 ...address...
3697 </btpr:sender-address>
3698 </btpr:confirmed>
```

### 3699 CANCEL

```
3700 <btpr:cancel id?>
3701 <btpr:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btpr:inferior-identifier>
3702 <btpr:qualifiers> ?
3703 ...qualifiers...
3704 </btpr:qualifiers>
3705 <btpr:target-additional-information> ?
3706 ...additional address information...
3707 </btpr:target-additional-information>
3708 <btpr:sender-address> ?
3709 ...address...
3710 </btpr:sender-address>
3711 </btpr:cancel>
```

### 3712 CANCELLED

```
3713 <btpr:cancelled id?>
3714 <btpr:superior-identifier>...URI...</btpr:superior-identifier>
3715 <btpr:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btpr:inferior-identifier> ?
3716 <btpr:qualifiers> ?
3717 ...qualifiers...
3718 </btpr:qualifiers>
3719 <btpr:target-additional-information> ?
3720 ...additional address information...
3721 </btpr:target-additional-information>
3722 <btpr:sender-address> ?
3723 ...address...
3724 </btpr:sender-address>
3725 </btpr:cancelled>
```

### 3726 CONFIRM\_ONE\_PHASE

```
3727 <btpr:confirm-one-phase id?>
3728 <btpr:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btpr:inferior-identifier>
3729 <btpr:report-hazard>true|false</btpr:report-hazard>
3730 <btpr:qualifiers> ?
3731 ...qualifiers...
3732 </btpr:qualifiers>
3733 <btpr:target-additional-information> ?
3734 ...additional address information...
3735 </btpr:target-additional-information>
```

```
3736 <btpt:sender-address> ?
3737 ...address...
3738 </btpt:sender-address>
3739 </btpt:confirm-one-phase>
```

## 3740 HAZARD

```
3741 <btpt:hazard id?>
3742 <btpt:superior-identifier>...URI...</btpt:superior-identifier>
3743 <btpt:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btpt:inferior-identifier>
3744 <btpt:level>mixed|possible</btpt:level>
3745 <btpt:qualifiers> ?
3746 ...qualifiers...
3747 </btpt:qualifiers>
3748 <btpt:target-additional-information> ?
3749 ...additional address information...
3750 </btpt:target-additional-information>
3751 <btpt:sender-address> ?
3752 ...address...
3753 </btpt:sender-address>
3754 </btpt:hazard>
```

## 3755 CONTRADICTION

```
3756 <btpt:contradiction id?>
3757 <btpt:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btpt:inferior-identifier>
3758 <btpt:qualifiers> ?
3759 ...qualifiers...
3760 </btpt:qualifiers>
3761 <btpt:target-additional-information> ?
3762 ...additional address information...
3763 </btpt:target-additional-information>
3764 <btpt:sender-address> ?
3765 ...address...
3766 </btpt:sender-address>
3767 </btpt:contradiction>
```

## 3768 SUPERIOR\_STATE

```
3769 <btpt:superior-state id?>
3770 <btpt:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btpt:inferior-identifier>
3771 <btpt:status>active|prepared-
3772 received|inaccessible|unknown</btpt:status>
3773 <btpt:response-requested>true|false</btpt:response-requested>
3774 <btpt:qualifiers> ?
3775 ...qualifiers...
3776 </btpt:qualifiers>
3777 <btpt:target-additional-information> ?
3778 ...additional address information...
3779 </btpt:target-additional-information>
3780 <btpt:sender-address> ?
3781 ...address...
3782 </btpt:sender-address>
3783 </btpt:superior-state>
```

3784 **INFERIOR\_STATE**

```
3785 <btm:inferior-state id?>
3786 <btm:superior-identifier>...URI...</btm:superior-identifier>
3787 <btm:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btm:inferior-identifier>
3788 <btm:status>active|inaccessible|unknown</btm:status>
3789 <btm:response-requested>true|false</btm:response-requested>
3790 <btm:qualifiers> ?
3791 ...qualifiers...
3792 </btm:qualifiers>
3793 <btm:target-additional-information> ?
3794 ...additional address information...
3795 </btm:target-additional-information>
3796 <btm:sender-address> ?
3797 ...address...
3798 </btm:sender-address>
3799 </btm:inferior-state>
```

3800 **REDIRECT**

```
3801 <btm:redirect id?>
3802 <btm:superior-identifier>...URI...</btm:superior-identifier> ?
3803 <btm:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btm:inferior-identifier>
3804 <btm:old-address> +
3805 ...address...
3806 </btm:old-address>
3807 <btm:new-address> +
3808 ...address...
3809 </btm:new-address>
3810 <btm:qualifiers> ?
3811 ...qualifiers...
3812 </btm:qualifiers>
3813 <btm:target-additional-information> ?
3814 ...additional address information...
3815 </btm:target-additional-information>
3816 </btm:redirect>
```

3817 **BEGIN**

```
3818 <btm:begin id?>
3819 <btm:transaction-type>cohesion|atom</btm:transaction-type>
3820 <btm:qualifiers> ?
3821 ...qualifiers...
3822 </btm:qualifiers>
3823 <btm:target-additional-information> ?
3824 ...additional address information...
3825 </btm:target-additional-information>
3826 <btm:reply-address> ?
3827 ...address...
3828 </btm:reply-address>
3829 </btm:begin>
```



3830 **BEGUN**

```
3831 <btp:begin id?>
3832   <btp:decider-address> *
3833     ...address...
3834 </btp:decider-address>
3835   <btp:inferior-address> *
3836     ...address...
3837 </btp:inferior-address>
3838   <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-
3839 identifier>
3840   <btp:qualifiers> ?
3841     ...qualifiers...
3842 </btp:qualifiers>
3843   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3844     ...additional address information...
3845 </btp:target-additional-information>
3846 </btp:begin>
```

3847 **PREPARE\_INFERIORS**

```
3848 <btp:prepare-inferiors id?>
3849   <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-
3850 identifier>
3851   <btp:inferiors-list> ?
3852     <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-
3853 identifier> +
3854 </btp:inferiors-list>
3855   <btp:qualifiers> ?
3856     ...qualifiers...
3857 </btp:qualifiers>
3858   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3859     ..additional address information...
3860 </btp:target-additional-information>
3861   <btp:reply-address> ?
3862     ...address...
3863 </btp:reply-address>
3864 </btp:prepare-inferiors>
```

3865 **CONFIRM\_TRANSACTION**

```
3866 <btp:confirm-transaction id?>
3867   <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-
3868 identifier>
3869   <btp:inferiors-list> ?
3870     <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-
3871 identifier> +
3872 </btp:inferiors-list>
3873   <btp:report-hazard>true|false</btp:report-hazard>
3874   <btp:qualifiers> ?
3875     ...qualifiers...
3876 </btp:qualifiers>
3877   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3878     ...additional address information...
```

```
3879     </btp:target-additional-information>
3880     <btp:reply-address> ?
3881         ...address...
3882     </btp:reply-address>
3883 </btp:confirm_transaction>
```

## 3884 TRANSACTION\_CONFIRMED

```
3885 <btp:transaction-confirmed id?>
3886     <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-
3887     identifier>
3888     <btp:qualifiers> ?
3889         ...qualifiers...
3890     </btp:qualifiers>
3891     <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3892         ...additional address information...
3893     </btp:target-additional-information>
3894 </btp:transaction-confirmed>
```

## 3895 CANCEL\_TRANSACTION

```
3896 <btp:cancel-transaction id?>
3897     <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-
3898     identifier>
3899     <btp:report-hazard>true|false</btp:report-hazard>
3900     <btp:qualifiers> ?
3901         ...qualifiers...
3902     </btp:qualifiers>
3903     <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3904         ...additional address information...
3905     </btp:target-additional-information>
3906     <btp:reply-address> ?
3907         ...address...
3908     </btp:reply-address>
3909 </btp:cancel-transaction>
```

## 3910 CANCEL\_INFERIORS

```
3911 <btp:cancel-inferiors id?>
3912     <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-
3913     identifier> ?
3914     <btp:inferiors-list>
3915         <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier> +
3916     </btp:inferiors-list>
3917     <btp:qualifiers> ?
3918         ...qualifiers...
3919     </btp:qualifiers>
3920     <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3921         ...additional address information...
3922     </btp:target-additional-information>
3923     <btp:reply-address> ?
3924         ...address...
3925     </btp:reply-address>
3926 </btp:cancel-inferiors>
```

3927 **TRANSACTION\_CANCELLED**

```
3928 <btpt:transaction-cancelled id?>
3929   <btpt:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btpt:transaction-
3930 identifier>
3931   <btpt:qualifiers> ?
3932     ...qualifiers...
3933 </btpt:qualifiers>
3934 <btpt:target-additional-information> ?
3935   ...additional address information...
3936 </btpt:target-additional-information>
3937 </btpt:transaction-cancelled>
```

3938 **REQUEST\_INFERIOR\_STATUSES**

```
3939 <btpt:request-inferior-statuses id?>
3940   <btpt:target-identifier>...URI...</btpt:target-identifier>
3941   <btpt:inferiors-list> ?
3942     <btpt:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btpt:inferior-
3943 identifier> +
3944 </btpt:inferiors-list>
3945   <btpt:qualifiers> ?
3946     ...qualifiers...
3947 </btpt:qualifiers>
3948 <btpt:target-additional-information> ?
3949   ...additional address information...
3950 </btpt:target-additional-information>
3951 <btpt:reply-address> ?
3952   ...address...
3953 </btpt:reply-address>
3954 </btpt:request-inferior-statuses>
```

3955 **INFERIOR\_STATUSES**

```
3956 <btpt:inferior-statuses id?>
3957   <btpt:responders-identifier>...URI...</btpt:responders-identifier>
3958   <btpt:status-list>
3959     <btpt:status-item> +
3960       <btpt:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btpt:inferior-
3961 identifier>
3962       <btpt:status>active|resigned|preparing|prepared|
3963         autonomously-confirmed|autonomously-cancelled|
3964         confirming|confirmed|cancelling|cancelled|
3965         cancel-contradiction|confirm-contradiction|
3966         hazard|invalid</btpt:status>
3967       <btpt:qualifiers> ?
3968         ...qualifiers...
3969     </btpt:status-item>
3970 </btpt:status-list>
3971 <btpt:qualifiers> ?
3972   ...qualifiers...
3973 </btpt:qualifiers>
3974 <btpt:target-additional-information> ?
```

```
3976     ...additional address information...
3977     </btp:target-additional-information>
3978 </btp:inferior-statuses>
```

## 3979 **Standard qualifiers**

3980 The informal syntax for these messages assumes the namespace prefix “btpq” is associated with  
3981 the URI “urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:qualifiers”.

## 3982 **Transaction timelimit**

```
3983     <btpq:transaction-timelimit>
3984     <btpq:timelimit>
3985     ...time in seconds...
3986     </btpq:timelimit>
3987 </btpq:transaction-timelimit>
```

## 3988 **Inferior timeout**

```
3989     <btpq:inferior-timeout>
3990     <btpq:timeout>
3991     ...time in seconds...
3992     </btpq:timeout>
3993     <btpq:intended-decision>confirm|cancel</btpq:intended-decision>
3994 </btpq:inferior-timeout>
```

## 3995 **Minimum inferior timeout**

```
3996     <btpq:minimum-inferior-timeout>
3997     <btpq:minimum-timeout>
3998     ...time in seconds...
3999     </btpq:minimum-timeout>
4000 </btpq:minimum-inferior-timeout>
```

## 4001 **Inferior name**

```
4002     <btpq:inferior-name>
4003     <btpq:inferior-name>
4004     ...string...
4005     </btpq:inferior-name>
4006 </btpq:inferior-name>
```

## 4007 **Compounding of Messages**

4008 Relating BTP to one another, in a “group” is represented by containing them within the  
4009 btp:related-group element, with the related messages as child elements. The processing for the  
4010 group is defined in the section “Groups – combinations of related messages”. For example

```
4011     <btp:related-group>
4012     <btp:context-reply>
4013     ...<completion-status>related</completion-status> ...
4014     </btp:context-reply>
```

```
4015     <btp:enrol>...</btp:enrol>
4016     <btp:prepared>...</btp:prepared>
4017 </btp:related-group>
```

4018 If the rules for the group state that the “target-address” of the abstract message is omitted, the  
4019 corresponding target-address-information element shall be absent in the message in the related-  
4020 group. The carrier protocol binding specifies how a relation between application and BTP  
4021 messages is represented.

4022 Bundling (semantically insignificant combination) of BTP messages and related groups is  
4023 indicated with the "btp:messages" element, with the bundled messages and related groups as child  
4024 elements. For example (confirming one and cancelling another inferiors of a cohesion):

4025

```
4026     <btp:messages>
4027     <btp:confirm>...</btp:confirm>
4028     <btp:cancel>...</btp:cancel>
4029 </btp:messages>
4030
```

## 4031 XML Schemas

### 4032 XML schema for BTP messages

```
4033 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
4034 <schema
4035   xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
4036   targetNamespace="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core"
4037   xmlns:btp="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core"
4038   elementFormDefault="qualified">
4039
4040   <!-- Qualifiers -->
4041   <complexType name="qualifier-type">
4042     <simpleContent>
4043       <extension base="anyType">
4044         <attribute name="must-be-understood" type="boolean"/>
4045         <attribute name="to-be-propagated" type="boolean"/>
4046       </extension>
4047     </simpleContent>
4048   </complexType>
4049
4050   <element name="qualifier" type="btp:qualifier-type" abstract="true"/>
4051
4052   <element name="qualifiers">
4053     <complexType>
4054       <sequence>
4055         <element ref="btp:qualifier" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
4056       </sequence>
4057     </complexType>
4058   </element>
4059   <!-- example qualifier:
4060     <element name="some-qualifer" type="btp:qualifier-type"
4061 substitutionGroup="btp:qualifier"/>
```

```

4062 -->
4063
4064 <!-- Message set data types -->
4065 <simpleType name="identifier">
4066     <restriction base="anyURI" />
4067 </simpleType>
4068 <simpleType name="additional-information">
4069     <restriction base="string" />
4070 </simpleType>
4071 <complexType name="address">
4072     <sequence>
4073         <element name="binding-name" type="string"/>
4074         <element name="binding-address" type="string"/>
4075         <element name="additional-information" type="btp:additional-
4076 information" minOccurs="0" />
4077     </sequence>
4078 </complexType>
4079 <simpleType name="superior-type">
4080     <restriction base="string">
4081         <enumeration value="cohesion"/>
4082         <enumeration value="atom"/>
4083     </restriction>
4084 </simpleType>
4085 <simpleType name="transaction-type">
4086     <restriction base="string">
4087         <enumeration value="cohesion"/>
4088         <enumeration value="atom"/>
4089     </restriction>
4090 </simpleType>
4091
4092 <!-- Compounding -->
4093 <element name="messages">
4094     <complexType>
4095         <sequence>
4096             <element ref="btp:message" minOccurs="0"
4097 maxOccurs="unbounded" />
4098         </sequence>
4099     </complexType>
4100 </element>
4101 <element name="related-group" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4102     <complexType>
4103         <sequence>
4104             <element ref="btp:message" minOccurs="0"
4105 maxOccurs="unbounded" />
4106         </sequence>
4107     </complexType>
4108 </element>
4109
4110 <!-- Message set -->
4111 <element name="message" abstract="true" />
4112 <element name="context" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4113     <complexType>
4114         <sequence>
4115             <element name="superior-address" type="btp:address"
4116 maxOccurs="unbounded" />

```

```

4117         <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4118         <element name="superior-type" type="btp:superior-type"/>
4119         <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4120         <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
4121 minOccurs="0"/>
4122     </sequence>
4123     <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4124 </complexType>
4125 </element>
4126 <element name="context-reply" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4127     <complexType>
4128         <sequence>
4129             <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4130             <element name="completion-status">
4131                 <simpleType>
4132                     <restriction base="string">
4133                         <enumeration value="completed"/>
4134                         <enumeration value="incomplete"/>
4135                         <enumeration value="related"/>
4136                         <enumeration value="repudiated"/>
4137                     </restriction>
4138                 </simpleType>
4139             </element>
4140             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4141             <element name="target-additional-information"
4142 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4143         </sequence>
4144         <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4145     </complexType>
4146 </element>
4147 <element name="request-status" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4148     <complexType>
4149         <sequence>
4150             <element name="target-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4151             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4152             <element name="target-additional-information"
4153 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4154             <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
4155 minOccurs="0"/>
4156         </sequence>
4157         <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4158     </complexType>
4159 </element>
4160 <element name="status" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4161     <complexType>
4162         <sequence>
4163             <element name="responders-identifier"
4164 type="btp:identifier"/>
4165             <element name="status-value">
4166                 <simpleType>
4167                     <restriction base="string">
4168                         <enumeration value="created"/>
4169                         <enumeration value="enrolling"/>
4170                         <enumeration value="active"/>
4171                         <enumeration value="resigning"/>

```

```

4172         <enumeration value="resigned"/>
4173         <enumeration value="preparing"/>
4174         <enumeration value="prepared"/>
4175         <enumeration value="confirming"/>
4176         <enumeration value="confirmed"/>
4177         <enumeration value="cancelling"/>
4178         <enumeration value="cancelled"/>
4179         <enumeration value="cancel-contradiction"/>
4180         <enumeration value="confirm-contradiction"/>
4181         <enumeration value="hazard"/>
4182         <enumeration value="contradicted"/>
4183         <enumeration value="unknown"/>
4184         <enumeration value="inaccessible"/>
4185     </restriction>
4186     </simpleType>
4187 </element>
4188     <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4189     <element name="target-additional-information"
4190 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4191 </sequence>
4192     <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4193 </complexType>
4194 </element>
4195
4196     <element name="fault" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4197         <complexType>
4198             <sequence>
4199                 <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"
4200 minOccurs="0"/>
4201                 <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"
4202 minOccurs="0"/>
4203                 <element name="fault-type">
4204                     <simpleType>
4205                         <restriction base="string">
4206                             <enumeration value="communication-failure"/>
4207                             <enumeration value="duplicate-inferior"/>
4208                             <enumeration value="general"/>
4209                             <enumeration value="invalid-decider"/>
4210                             <enumeration value="invalid-inferior"/>
4211                             <enumeration value="invalid-superior"/>
4212                             <enumeration value="status-refused"/>
4213                             <enumeration value="invalid-terminator"/>
4214                             <enumeration value="unknown-parameter"/>
4215                             <enumeration value="unknown-transaction"/>
4216                             <enumeration value="unsupported-qualifier"/>
4217                             <enumeration value="wrong-state"/>
4218                             <enumeration value="redirect"/>
4219                         </restriction>
4220                     </simpleType>
4221                 </element>
4222                 <element name="fault-data" type="anyType" minOccurs="0"/>
4223                 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4224                 <element name="target-additional-information"
4225 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4226             </sequence>

```



```

4227         <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4228     </complexType>
4229 </element>
4230 <element name="enrol" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4231     <complexType>
4232         <sequence>
4233             <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4234             <element name="response-requested" type="boolean"
4235 minOccurs="0" default="false"/>
4236             <element name="inferior-address" type="btp:address"
4237 minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
4238             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4239             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4240             <element name="target-additional-information"
4241 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4242             <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
4243 minOccurs="0"/>
4244         </sequence>
4245         <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4246     </complexType>
4247 </element>
4248
4249 <element name="enrolled" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4250     <complexType>
4251         <sequence>
4252             <element name="sender-address" type="btp:address"
4253 minOccurs="0"/>
4254             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4255             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4256             <element name="target-additional-information"
4257 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4258         </sequence>
4259         <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4260     </complexType>
4261 </element>
4262 <element name="resign" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4263     <complexType>
4264         <sequence>
4265             <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4266             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4267             <element name="response-requested" type="boolean"
4268 minOccurs="0" default="false"/>
4269             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4270             <element name="target-additional-information"
4271 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4272             <element name="sender-address" type="btp:address"
4273 minOccurs="0"/>
4274         </sequence>
4275         <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4276     </complexType>
4277 </element>
4278
4279 <element name="resigned" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4280     <complexType>
4281         <sequence>

```

```

4282         <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4283         <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4284         <element name="target-additional-information"
4285 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4286         <element name="sender-address" type="btp:address"
4287 minOccurs="0"/>
4288     </sequence>
4289     <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4290 </complexType>
4291 </element>
4292
4293     <element name="prepare" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4294     <complexType>
4295     <sequence>
4296         <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4297         <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4298         <element name="target-additional-information"
4299 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4300         <element name="sender-address" type="btp:address"
4301 minOccurs="0"/>
4302     </sequence>
4303     <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4304 </complexType>
4305 </element>
4306     <element name="prepared" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4307     <complexType>
4308     <sequence>
4309         <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4310         <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4311         <element name="default-is-cancel" type="boolean"/>
4312         <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4313         <element name="target-additional-information"
4314 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4315         <element name="sender-address" type="btp:address"
4316 minOccurs="0"/>
4317     </sequence>
4318     <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4319 </complexType>
4320 </element>
4321
4322     <element name="confirm" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4323     <complexType>
4324     <sequence>
4325         <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4326         <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4327         <element name="target-additional-information"
4328 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4329         <element name="sender-address" type="btp:address"
4330 minOccurs="0"/>
4331     </sequence>
4332     <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4333 </complexType>
4334 </element>
4335
4336     <element name="confirmed" substitutionGroup="btp:message">

```

```

4337     <complexType>
4338         <sequence>
4339             <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4340             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4341             <element name="confirmed-received" type="boolean"/>
4342             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4343             <element name="target-additional-information"
4344 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4345             <element name="sender-address" type="btp:address"
4346 minOccurs="0"/>
4347         </sequence>
4348         <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4349     </complexType>
4350 </element>
4351 <element name="cancel" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4352     <complexType>
4353         <sequence>
4354             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4355             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4356             <element name="target-additional-information"
4357 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4358             <element name="sender-address" type="btp:address"
4359 minOccurs="0"/>
4360         </sequence>
4361         <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4362     </complexType>
4363 </element>
4364 <element name="cancelled" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4365     <complexType>
4366         <sequence>
4367             <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4368             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"
4369 minOccurs="0"/>
4370             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4371             <element name="target-additional-information"
4372 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4373             <element name="sender-address" type="btp:address"
4374 minOccurs="0"/>
4375         </sequence>
4376         <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4377     </complexType>
4378 </element>
4379
4380 <element name="confirm-one-phase" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4381     <complexType>
4382         <sequence>
4383             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4384             <element name="report-hazard" type="boolean"/>
4385             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4386             <element name="target-additional-information"
4387 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4388             <element name="sender-address" type="btp:address"
4389 minOccurs="0"/>
4390         </sequence>
4391         <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>

```

```

4392     </complexType>
4393 </element>
4394 <element name="hazard" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4395     <complexType>
4396         <sequence>
4397             <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4398             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4399             <element name="level">
4400                 <simpleType>
4401                     <restriction base="string">
4402                         <enumeration value="mixed"/>
4403                         <enumeration value="possible"/>
4404                     </restriction>
4405                 </simpleType>
4406             </element>
4407             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4408             <element name="target-additional-information"
4409 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4410             <element name="sender-address" type="btp:address"
4411 minOccurs="0"/>
4412         </sequence>
4413         <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4414     </complexType>
4415 </element>
4416 <element name="contradiction" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4417     <complexType>
4418         <sequence>
4419             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4420             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4421             <element name="target-additional-information"
4422 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4423             <element name="sender-address" type="btp:address"
4424 minOccurs="0"/>
4425         </sequence>
4426         <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4427     </complexType>
4428 </element>
4429
4430 <element name="superior-state" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4431     <complexType>
4432         <sequence>
4433             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4434             <element name="status">
4435                 <simpleType>
4436                     <restriction base="string">
4437                         <enumeration value="active"/>
4438                         <enumeration value="prepared-received"/>
4439                         <enumeration value="inaccessible"/>
4440                         <enumeration value="unknown"/>
4441                     </restriction>
4442                 </simpleType>
4443             </element>
4444             <element name="response-requested" type="boolean"
4445 minOccurs="0" default="false"/>
4446             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>

```

```

4447         <element name="target-additional-information"
4448 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4449         <element name="sender-address" type="btp:address"
4450 minOccurs="0"/>
4451     </sequence>
4452     <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4453 </complexType>
4454 </element>
4455 <element name="inferior-state" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4456     <complexType>
4457         <sequence>
4458             <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4459             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4460             <element name="status">
4461                 <simpleType>
4462                     <restriction base="string">
4463                         <enumeration value="active"/>
4464                         <enumeration value="inaccessible"/>
4465                         <enumeration value="unknown"/>
4466                     </restriction>
4467                 </simpleType>
4468             </element>
4469             <element name="response-requested" type="boolean"
4470 minOccurs="0" default="false"/>
4471             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4472             <element name="target-additional-information"
4473 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4474             <element name="sender-address" type="btp:address"
4475 minOccurs="0"/>
4476         </sequence>
4477         <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4478     </complexType>
4479 </element>
4480 <element name="redirect" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4481     <complexType>
4482         <sequence>
4483             <element name="superior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"
4484 minOccurs="0"/>
4485             <element name="inferior-identifier" type="btp:identifier"
4486 />
4487             <element name="old-address" type="btp:address"
4488 maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
4489             <element name="new-address" type="btp:address"
4490 maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
4491             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4492             <element name="target-additional-information"
4493 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4494         </sequence>
4495         <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4496     </complexType>
4497 </element>
4498
4499 <element name="begin" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4500     <complexType>
4501         <sequence>

```

```

4502         <element name="transaction-type" type="btp:superior-type"/>
4503         <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4504         <element name="target-additional-information"
4505 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4506         <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
4507 minOccurs="0"/>
4508     </sequence>
4509     <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4510 </complexType>
4511 </element>
4512 <element name="begun" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4513     <complexType>
4514         <sequence>
4515             <element name="decider-address" type="btp:address"
4516 minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
4517             <element name="inferior-address" type="btp:address"
4518 minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
4519             <element name="transaction-identifier"
4520 type="btp:identifier" minOccurs="0"/>
4521             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4522             <element name="target-additional-information"
4523 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4524         </sequence>
4525         <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4526     </complexType>
4527 </element>
4528 <element name="prepare-inferiors" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4529     <complexType>
4530         <sequence>
4531             <element name="transaction-identifier"
4532 type="btp:identifier"/>
4533             <element name="inferiors-list" minOccurs="0">
4534                 <complexType>
4535                     <sequence>
4536                         <element name="inferior-identifier"
4537 type="btp:identifier" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
4538                     </sequence>
4539                 </complexType>
4540             </element>
4541             <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4542             <element name="target-additional-information"
4543 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4544             <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
4545 minOccurs="0"/>
4546         </sequence>
4547         <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4548     </complexType>
4549 </element>
4550 <element name="confirm-transaction" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4551     <complexType>
4552         <sequence>
4553             <element name="transaction-identifier"
4554 type="btp:identifier"/>
4555             <element name="inferiors-list" minOccurs="0">
4556                 <complexType>

```

```

4557         <sequence>
4558             <element name="inferior-identifier"
4559 type="btp:identifier" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
4560         </sequence>
4561     </complexType>
4562 </element>
4563     <element name="report-hazard" type="boolean"/>
4564     <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4565     <element name="target-additional-information"
4566 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4567     <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
4568 minOccurs="0"/>
4569 </sequence>
4570     <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4571 </complexType>
4572 </element>
4573     <element name="transaction-confirmed" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4574         <complexType>
4575             <sequence>
4576                 <element name="transaction-identifier"
4577 type="btp:identifier"/>
4578                 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4579                 <element name="target-additional-information"
4580 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4581             </sequence>
4582             <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4583         </complexType>
4584     </element>
4585     <element name="cancel-transaction" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4586         <complexType>
4587             <sequence>
4588                 <element name="transaction-identifier"
4589 type="btp:identifier"/>
4590                 <element name="report-hazard" type="boolean"/>
4591                 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4592                 <element name="target-additional-information"
4593 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4594                 <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
4595 minOccurs="0"/>
4596             </sequence>
4597             <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4598         </complexType>
4599     </element>
4600     <element name="cancel-inferiors" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4601         <complexType>
4602             <sequence>
4603                 <sequence>
4604                     <element name="transaction-identifier"
4605 type="btp:identifier" minOccurs="0"/>
4606                     <element name="inferiors-list">
4607                         <complexType>
4608                             <sequence>
4609                                 <element name="inferior-identifier"
4610 type="btp:identifier" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
4611                             </sequence>

```

```

4612         </complexType>
4613     </element>
4614     <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4615     <element name="target-additional-information"
4616 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4617     <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
4618 minOccurs="0"/>
4619 </sequence>
4620 <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4621 </complexType>
4622 </element>
4623 <element name="transaction-cancelled" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4624 <complexType>
4625 <sequence>
4626 <element name="transaction-identifier"
4627 type="btp:identifier"/>
4628 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4629 <element name="target-additional-information"
4630 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4631 </sequence>
4632 <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4633 </complexType>
4634 </element>
4635
4636 <element name="request-inferior-statuses"
4637 substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4638 <complexType>
4639 <sequence>
4640 <element name="target-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
4641 <element name="inferiors-list" minOccurs="0">
4642 <complexType>
4643 <sequence>
4644 <element name="inferior-identifier"
4645 type="btp:identifier" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
4646 </sequence>
4647 </complexType>
4648 </element>
4649 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4650 <element name="target-additional-information"
4651 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4652 <element name="reply-address" type="btp:address"
4653 minOccurs="0"/>
4654 </sequence>
4655 <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4656 </complexType>
4657 </element>
4658
4659 <element name="inferior-statuses" substitutionGroup="btp:message">
4660 <complexType>
4661 <sequence>
4662 <element name="responders-identifier"
4663 type="btp:identifier"/>
4664 <element name="status-list">
4665 <complexType>
4666 <sequence>

```



```

4667         <element name="status-item" maxOccurs="unbounded">
4668             <complexType>
4669                 <sequence>
4670                     <element name="inferior-identifier"
4671 type="btp:identifier"/>
4672                     <element name="status">
4673                         <simpleType>
4674                             <restriction base="string">
4675                                 <enumeration value="active"/>
4676                                 <enumeration value="resigned"/>
4677                                 <enumeration value="preparing"/>
4678                                 <enumeration value="prepared"/>
4679                                 <enumeration value="autonomously-
4680 confirmed"/>
4681                                 <enumeration value="autonomously-
4682 cancelled"/>
4683                                 <enumeration value="confirming"/>
4684                                 <enumeration value="confirmed"/>
4685                                 <enumeration value="cancelling"/>
4686                                 <enumeration value="cancelled"/>
4687                                 <enumeration value="cancel-
4688 contradiction"/>
4689                                 <enumeration value="confirm-
4690 contradiction"/>
4691                                 <enumeration value="hazard"/>
4692                                 <enumeration value="invalid"/>
4693                             </restriction>
4694                         </simpleType>
4695                     </element>
4696                     <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4697                 </sequence>
4698             </complexType>
4699         </element>
4700     </sequence>
4701 </complexType>
4702 </element>
4703 <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
4704 <element name="target-additional-information"
4705 type="btp:additional-information" minOccurs="0"/>
4706 </sequence>
4707 <attribute name="id" type="ID" use="optional"/>
4708 </complexType>
4709 </element>
4710
4711 </schema>

```

## 4712 XML schema for standard qualifiers

```

4713 <?xml version="1.0"?>
4714 <schema
4715     xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
4716     targetNamespace="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:qualifiers"
4717     xmlns:btpq="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:qualifiers"
4718     xmlns:btp="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core"
4719     elementFormDefault="qualified">

```

```

4720
4721     <element name="transaction-timelimit"
4722 substitutionGroup="btp:qualifier">
4723     <complexType>
4724         <complexContent>
4725             <extension base="btp:qualifier-type">
4726                 <sequence>
4727                     <element name="timelimit"
4728 type="nonNegativeInteger"/>
4729                 </sequence>
4730             </extension>
4731         </complexContent>
4732     </complexType>
4733 </element>
4734 <element name="inferior-timeout" substitutionGroup="btp:qualifier">
4735     <complexType>
4736         <complexContent>
4737             <extension base="btp:qualifier-type">
4738                 <sequence>
4739                     <element name="timelimit"
4740 type="nonNegativeInteger"/>
4741                     <element name="intended-decision">
4742                         <simpleType>
4743                             <restriction base="string">
4744                                 <enumeration value="confirm"/>
4745                                 <enumeration value="cancel"/>
4746                             </restriction>
4747                         </simpleType>
4748                     </element>
4749                 </sequence>
4750             </extension>
4751         </complexContent>
4752     </complexType>
4753 </element>
4754 <element name="minimum-inferior-timeout"
4755 substitutionGroup="btp:qualifier">
4756     <complexType>
4757         <complexContent>
4758             <extension base="btp:qualifier-type">
4759                 <sequence>
4760                     <element name="minimum-timeout"
4761 type="nonNegativeInteger"/>
4762                 </sequence>
4763             </extension>
4764         </complexContent>
4765     </complexType>
4766 </element>
4767 <element name="inferior-name" substitutionGroup="btp:qualifier">
4768     <complexType>
4769         <complexContent>
4770             <extension base="btp:qualifier-type">
4771                 <sequence>
4772                     <element name="inferior-name" type="string"/>
4773                 </sequence>
4774             </extension>

```

```
4775         </complexContent>
4776     </complexType>
4777 </element>
4778 </schema>
4779
```

## 4780 **Carrier Protocol Bindings**

4781 The notion of bindings is introduced to act as the glue between the BTP messages and an  
4782 underlying transport. A binding specification must define various particulars of how the BTP  
4783 messages are carried and some aspects of how the related application messages are carried. This  
4784 document specifies two bindings: a SOAP binding and a SOAP + Attachments binding. However,  
4785 other bindings could be specified by the Oasis BTP technical committee or by a third party. For  
4786 example, in the future a binding might exist to put a BTP message directly on top of HTTP  
4787 without the use of SOAP, or a closed community could define their own binding. To ensure that  
4788 such specifications are complete, the Binding Proforma defines the information that must be  
4789 included in a binding specification.

4790 [A registry of bindings, with links to the binding specifications is maintained on the OASIS](http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/business-transactions)  
4791 [website, linked from the BTP page \(http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/business-](http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/business-transactions)  
4792 [transactions\). Any party may submit a binding specification and request its addition to this](http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/business-transactions)  
4793 [registry. The presence of an entry in the registry does not, of itself, imply ratification or approval](http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/business-transactions)  
4794 [by OASIS or the BTP Technical Committee.](http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/business-transactions)

## 4795 **Carrier Protocol Binding Proforma**

4796 A BTP carrier binding specification should provide the following information:

4797 **Binding name:** A name for the binding, as used in the “binding name” field of BTP addresses  
4798 (and available for declaring the capabilities of an implementation). Binding specified in this  
4799 document, and future revisions of this document have binding names that are simple strings of  
4800 letters, numbers and hyphens (and, in particular, do not contain colons). Bindings specified  
4801 elsewhere shall have binding names that are URIs. Bindings specified in this document use  
4802 numbers to identify the version of the binding, not the version(s) of the carrier protocol.

4803 **Binding address format:** This section states the format of the “binding address” field of a BTP  
4804 address for this binding. For many bindings, this will be a URL of some kind; for other bindings  
4805 it may be some other form

4806 **BTP message representation:** This section will define how BTP messages are represented. For  
4807 many bindings, the BTP message syntax will be as specified in the XML schema defined in this  
4808 document, and the normal string encoding of that XML will be used.

4809 **Mapping for BTP messages (unrelated) :** This section will define how BTP messages that are  
4810 not related to application messages are sent in either direction between Superior and Inferior. (i.e.  
4811 those messages sent directly between BTP actors). This mapping need not be symmetric (i.e.  
4812 Superior to Inferior may differ to some degree to Inferior to Superior). The mapping may define  
4813 particular rules for particular BTP messages, or messages with particular parameter values (e.g.  
4814 the FAULT message with “fault-type” “CommunicationFailure” will typically not be sent as a

4815 BTP message). The mapping states any constraints or requirements on which BTP may or must  
4816 be bundled together by compounding.

4817 **Mapping for BTP messages related to application messages:** This section will define how  
4818 BTP messages that are related to application messages are sent. A binding specification may defer  
4819 details of this to a particular application (e.g. a mapping specification could just say “the  
4820 CONTEXT may be carried as a parameter of an application invocation”). Alternatively, the  
4821 binding may specify a general method that represents the relationship between application and  
4822 BTP messages.

4823 **Implicit messages:** This section specifies which BTP messages, if any, are not sent explicitly but  
4824 are treated as implicit in carrier-protocol mechanisms, application messages or other BTP  
4825 messages. This may depend on particular parameter values of the BTP messages or the  
4826 application messages.

4827 **Faults:** The relationship between the fault and exception reporting mechanisms of the carrier  
4828 protocol and of BTP shall be defined. This may include definition of which carrier protocol  
4829 exceptions are equivalent to a FAULT/communication-failure message.

4830 **Relationship to other bindings:** Any relationship to other bindings is defined in this section. If  
4831 BTP addresses with different bindings are be considered to match (for purposes of identifying the  
4832 peer Superior/Inferior and redirection), this should be specified here.

4833 **Limitations on BTP use:** Any limitations on the full range of BTP functionality that are imposed  
4834 by use of this binding should be listed. This would include limitations on which messages can be  
4835 sent, which event sequences are supported and restrictions on parameter values. Such limitations  
4836 may reduce the usefulness of an implementation, but may be appropriate in certain environments.

4837 **Other:** Other features of the binding, especially any that will potentially affect interoperability  
4838 should be specified here. This may include restrictions or requirements on the use or support of  
4839 optional carrier parameters or mechanisms or use of standard or other qualifiers.

#### 4840 **Bindings for request/response carrier protocols**

4841 BTP does not generally follow a request/response pattern. In particular, on the outcome  
4842 relationship either side may initiate a message – this is an essential part of the presume-abort  
4843 recovery paradigm although it is not limited to recovery cases. However, there are some BTP  
4844 messages, especially in the control relationship, that do have a request/response pattern. Many  
4845 (potential) carrier protocols (e.g. HTTP) do have a request/response pattern. The specification of  
4846 a binding specification to a request/response carrier protocol needs to state what rules apply –  
4847 which messages can be carried by requests, which by responses. The simplest rule is to send all  
4848 BTP messages on requests, and let the carrier responses travel back empty. This would be  
4849 inefficient in use of network resources, and possibly inconvenient when used for the BTP  
4850 request/response pairs.

4851 This section defines a set of rules that allow more efficient use of the carrier, while allowing the  
4852 initiator of a BTP request/response pair to ensure the BTP response is sent back on the carrier  
4853 response. These rules are specified in this section to enable binding specifications to reference  
4854 them, without requiring each binding specification to repeat similar information. These rules also

4855 allow the receiver of a message between Superior and Inferior (in either direction) on a carrier  
4856 protocol request to send any reply message on the carrier response – the “sender-address” field is  
4857 implicitly considered to be that of the sender of the carrier request.

4858 A binding to a request/response carrier is not required to use these rules. It may define other rules.

#### 4859 Request/response exploitation rules

4860 These rules allow implementations to use the request and response of the carrier protocol  
4861 efficiently, and, when a BTP request/response exchange occurs, to either treat the  
4862 request/response exchanges of the carrier protocol and of BTP independently, if both sides wish,  
4863 or allow either side to map them closely.

4864 Under these rules, an implementation sending a BTP request (i.e. a message, other than  
4865 CONTEXT, which has “reply-address” as a parameter in the abstract message definition), can  
4866 ensure that it and the reply map to a carrier request/response by supplying no value for the “reply-  
4867 address”. An implementation receiving such a request is required to send the BTP response on the  
4868 carrier response.

4869 Conversely, if an implementation does supply a “reply-address” value on the request, the receiver  
4870 has the option of sending the BTP response back on the carrier response, or sending it on a new  
4871 carrier request.

4872 Within the outcome relationship, apart from ENROL, there is no “reply-address”, and the parties  
4873 normally know each other’s “superior-address” and “inferior-address”. However, these messages  
4874 have a “sender-address”, which is used when the receiver does not have knowledge of the peer. In  
4875 this case, the “sender-address” is treated as the “reply-address” of the other messages – if the field  
4876 is absent in a message on a carrier request, the “sender-address” is implicitly that of the request  
4877 sender. Any message for the peer (including the three messages mentioned, FAULT but also any  
4878 other valid message in the Superior:Inferior relationship) may be sent on the carrier response.  
4879 Apart from this, both sides are permitted to treat the carrier request/response exchanges as  
4880 opportunities for sending messages to the appropriate destination.

4881 The rules:

4882 a) A BTP actor **may** bundle one or more BTP messages and related groups that  
4883 have the same binding address for their target in a single `btpr:messages` and  
4884 transmit this `btpr:messages` element on a carrier protocol request. There is no  
4885 restriction on which combinations of messages and groups may be so bundled,  
4886 other than that they have the same binding address, and that this binding address  
4887 is usable as the destination of a carrier protocol request.

4888 b) A BTP actor that has received a carrier protocol request to which it has not yet  
4889 responded, and which has one or more BTP messages and groups whose binding  
4890 address for the target matches the origin of the carrier request **may** bundle such  
4891 BTP messages in a single `btpr:messages` element and transmit that on the carrier  
4892 protocol response.

4893 c) A BTP actor that has received, on a carrier protocol request, one or more BTP  
4894 messages or related groups that require a BTP response and for which no “reply-

4895 address” was supplied, **must** bundle the responding BTP message and groups in a  
4896 btp:messages element and transmit this element on the carrier protocol response  
4897 to the request that carried the BTP request.

4898 d) A BTP actor that has received, on a carrier protocol request, one or more BTP  
4899 messages or related groups that, as abstract messages, have a “sender-address”  
4900 parameter but no “reply-address” was supplied and does not have knowledge of  
4901 the peer address, **must** bundle the responding BTP message and groups in a  
4902 btp:messages element and transmit this element on the carrier protocol response  
4903 to the request that carried the BTP request. If the actor does have knowledge of  
4904 the peer address it **may** send one or messages for the peer in the carrier protocol  
4905 response, regardless of whether the binding address of the peer matches the  
4906 address of the carrier protocol requestor.

4907 e) Where only one message or group is to be sent, it shall be contained within a  
4908 btp:messages element, as a bundle of one element.

4909 f) A BTP actor that receives a carrier protocol request carrying BTP messages that  
4910 do have a “reply-address”, or which initiate processing that produces BTP  
4911 messages whose target binding address matches the origin of the request, **may**  
4912 freely choose whether to use the carrier protocol response for the replies, or to  
4913 send back an “empty carrier protocol response”, and send the BTP replies in a  
4914 separately initiated carrier protocol request. The characteristics of an “empty  
4915 carrier protocol response” shall be stated in the particular binding specification.

4916 g) A BTP actor that sends BTP messages on a carrier protocol request **must** be able  
4917 to accept returning BTP messages on the corresponding carrier protocol response  
4918 and, if the actor has offered an address on which it will receive carrier requests,  
4919 must be able to accept “replying” BTP messages on a separate carrier protocol  
4920 request.

## 4921 **SOAP Binding**

4922 This binding describes how BTP messages will be carried using SOAP as in the [SOAP 1.1](#)  
4923 specification, using the SOAP literal messaging style conventions. If no application message is  
4924 sent at the same time, the BTP messages are contained within the SOAP Body element. If  
4925 application messages are sent, the BTP messages are contained in the SOAP Header element.

4926 **Binding name:** soap-http-1

4927 **Binding address format:** shall be a URL, of type HTTP.

4928 **BTP message representation:** The string representation of the XML, as specified in the XML  
4929 schema defined in this document shall be used. The BTP XML messages are embedded in the  
4930 SOAP message without the use of any specific encoding rules (literal style SOAP message);  
4931 hence the encodingStyle attribute need not be set or can be set to an empty string.

4932 **Mapping for BTP messages (unrelated):** The “request/response exploitation” rules shall be  
4933 used.

4934 BTP messages sent on an HTTP request or HTTP response which is not carrying an application  
4935 message, the messages are contained in a single btp:messages element which is the immediate  
4936 child element of the SOAP Body element.

4937 An “empty carrier protocol response” sent after receiving an HTTP request containing a  
4938 btp:messages element in the SOAP Body when the implementation chooses just to reply at the  
4939 lower level (and when the request/response exploitation rules allow an empty carrier protocol  
4940 response), shall be any of:

4941 a) an empty HTTP response

4942 b) an HTTP response containing an empty SOAP Envelope

4943 c) an HTTP response containing a SOAP Envelope containing a single, empty  
4944 btp:messages element.

4945 The receiver (the initial sender of the HTTP request) shall treat these in the same way – they have  
4946 no effect on the BTP sequence (other than indicating that the earlier sending did not cause a  
4947 communication failure.)

4948 If an application message is being sent at the same time, the mapping for related messages shall  
4949 be used, as if the BTP messages were related to the application message. (There is no ambiguity  
4950 in whether the BTP messages are related, because only CONTEXT and ENROL can be related to  
4951 an application message.)

4952 **Mapping for BTP messages related to application messages:** All BTP messages sent with an  
4953 application message, whether related to the application message or not, shall be sent in a single  
4954 btp:messages element in the SOAP Header. There shall be precisely one btp:messages element in  
4955 the SOAP Header.

4956 The “request/response exploitation” rules shall apply to the BTP messages carried in the SOAP  
4957 Header, as if they had been carried in a SOAP Body, unrelated to an application message, sent to  
4958 the same binding address.

4959 *Note – The application protocol itself (which is using the SOAP Body) may use the SOAP*  
4960 *RPC or document approach – this is determined by the application.*

4961 Only CONTEXT and ENROL messages are related (&) to application messages. If there is only  
4962 one CONTEXT or one ENROL message present in the SOAP Header, it is assumed to be related  
4963 to the whole of the application message in the SOAP Body. If there are multiple CONTEXT or  
4964 ENROL messages, any relation of these BTP messages shall be indicated by application specific  
4965 means.

4966 *Note 1 – An application protocol could use references to the ID values of the*  
4967 *BTP messages to indicate relation between BTP CONTEXT or ENROL*  
4968 *messages and the application message.*

4969 *Note 2 -- However indicated, what the relatedness means, or even whether it has*  
4970 *any significance at all, is a matter for the application.*

4971 **Implicit messages:** A SOAP FAULT, or other communication failure received in response to a  
4972 SOAP request that had a CONTEXT in the SOAP Header shall be treated as if a  
4973 CONTEXT\_REPLY/repudiated had been received. See also the discussion under “other” about  
4974 the SOAP mustUnderstand attribute.

4975 **Faults:** A SOAP FAULT or other communication failure shall be treated as  
4976 FAULT/communication-failure.

4977 **Relationship to other bindings:** A BTP address for Superior or Inferior that has the binding  
4978 string “soap-http-1” is considered to match one that has the binding string “soap-attachments-  
4979 http-1” if the binding address and additional information fields match.

4980 **Limitations on BTP use:** None

4981 **Other:** The SOAP BTP binding does not make use of SOAPAction HTTP header or actor  
4982 attribute. The SOAPAction HTTP header is left to be application specific when there are  
4983 application messages in the SOAP Body, as an already existing web service that is being  
4984 upgraded to use BTP might have already made use of SOAPAction. The SOAPAction HTTP  
4985 header shall contain no value when the SOAP message carries only BTP messages in the SOAP  
4986 Body.

4987 The SOAP mustUnderstand attribute, when used on the btp:messages containing a BTP  
4988 CONTEXT, ensures that the receiver (server, as a whole) supports BTP sufficiently to determine  
4989 whether any enrolments are necessary and replies with CONTEXT\_REPLY as appropriate. The  
4990 sender of the CONTEXT (and related application message) can use this to ensure that the  
4991 application work is performed as part of the business transaction, assuming the receiver’s SOAP  
4992 implementation supports the mustUnderstand attribute. If mustUnderstand if false, a receiver can  
4993 ignore the CONTEXT (if BTP is not supported there), and no CONTEXT\_REPLY will be  
4994 returned. It is a local option on the sender (client) side whether the absence of a  
4995 CONTEXT\_REPLY is assumed to be equivalent to aCONTEXT\_REPLY/ok (and the business  
4996 transaction allowed to proceed to confirmation).

4997 Note – some SOAP implementations may not support the mustUnderstand attribute sufficiently to  
4998 enforce these requirements.

#### 4999 **Example scenario using SOAP binding**

5000 The example below shows an application request with CONTEXT message sent from  
5001 client.example.com (which includes the Superior) to services.example.com (Service).

```
5002 <soap:Envelope  
5003     xmlns:soap="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"  
5004     soap:encodingStyle="">  
5005     <soap:Header>  
5006         <btp:messages xmlns:btp="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core">  
5007             <btp:context superior-type="atom">  
5008                 <btp:superior-address>  
5009                     <btp:binding>soap-http-1</btp:binding>
```



```

5011         <btp:binding-
5012 address>http://client.example.com/soaphandler</btp:binding-
5013 address>
5014         <btp:additional-information>btpeengine</btp:additional-
5015 information>
5016         </btp:superior-address>
5017         <btp:superior-
5018 identifier>http://example.com/1001</btp:superior-identifier>
5019         <btp:qualifiers>
5020         <btpq:transaction-timelimit
5021 xmlns:btpq="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:qualifiers"><btpq:timelimit
5022 >1800</btpq:timelimit></btpq:transaction-timelimit>
5023         </btp:qualifiers>
5024         </btp:context>
5025         </btp:messages>
5026     </soap:Header>
5027     <soap:Body>
5028         <ns1:orderGoods
5029 xmlns:ns1="http://example.com/2001/Services/xyzgoods">
5030         <custID>ABC8329045</custID>
5031         <itemID>224352</itemID>
5032         <quantity>5</quantity>
5033         </ns1:orderGoods>
5034     </soap:Body>
5035 </soap:Envelope>
5036

```

5037 The example below shows CONTEXT\_REPLY and a related ENROL message sent from  
5038 services.example.com to client.example.com, in reply to the previous message. There is no  
5039 application response, so the BTP messages are in the SOAP Body. The ENROL message does not  
5040 contain the target-additional-information, since the grouping rules for CONTEXT\_REPLY &  
5041 ENROL omit the "target-address" (the receiver of this example remembers the superior address  
5042 from the original CONTEXT)

```

5043 <soap:Envelope
5044     xmlns:soap="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
5045     soap:encodingStyle="">
5046     <soap:Header>
5047     </soap:Header>
5048     <soap:Body>
5049         <btp:messages xmlns:btp="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core">
5050         <btp:related-group>
5051         <btp:context-reply>
5052         <btp:target-additional-information>btpeengine</btp:target-
5053 additional-information>
5054         <btp:superior-
5055 identifier>http://example.com/1001</btp:superior-identifier>
5056         <completion-status>related</completion-status>
5057         </btp:context-reply>
5058         <btp:enrol response-requested="false">
5059         <btp:target-additional-
5060 information>btpeengine</btp:target-additional-information>
5061         <btp:superior-
5062 identifier>http://example.com/1001</btp:superior-identifier>

```

```
5063     <btp:inferior-address>
5064         <btp:binding>soap-http-1</btp:binding>
5065         <btp:binding-address>
5066             http://services.example.com/soaphandler
5067         </btp:binding-address>
5068     </btp:inferior-address>
5069     <btp:inferior-identifier>
5070         http://example.com/AAAB
5071     </btp:inferior-identifier>
5072 </btp:enrol>
5073 </btp:related-group>
5074 </btp:messages>
5075 </soap:Body>
5076 </soap:Envelope>
5077
```

## 5078 **SOAP + Attachments Binding**

5079 This binding describes how BTP messages will be carried using SOAP as in the [SOAP Messages](#)  
5080 [with Attachments](#) specification. It is a superset of the Basic SOAP binding, soap-http-1. The two  
5081 bindings only differ when application messages are sent.

5082 **Binding name:** soap-attachments-http-1

5083 **Binding address format:** as for soap-http-1

5084 **BTP message representation:** As for soap-http-1

5085 **Mapping for BTP messages (unrelated):** As for “soap-http-1” , except the SOAP Envelope  
5086 containing the SOAP Body containing the BTP messages shall be in a MIME body part, as  
5087 specified in [SOAP Messages with Attachments](#) specification. If an application message is being  
5088 sent at the same time, the mapping for related messages for this binding shall be used, as if the  
5089 BTP messages were related to the application message(s).

5090 **Mapping for BTP messages related to application messages:** MIME packaging shall be used.  
5091 One of the MIME multipart/related parts shall contain a SOAP Envelope, whose SOAP Headers  
5092 element shall contain precisely one btp:messages element, containing any BTP messages. Any  
5093 BTP CONTEXT in the btp:messages is considered to be related to the application message(s) in  
5094 the SOAP Body, and to also any of the MIME parts referenced from the SOAP Body (using the  
5095 “href” attribute).

5096 **Implicit messages:** As for soap-http-1.

5097 **Faults:** As for soap-http-1.

5098 **Relationship to other bindings:** A BTP address for Superior or Inferior that has the binding  
5099 string “soap-http-1” is considered to match one that has the binding string “soap-attachements-  
5100 http-1” if the binding address and additional information fields match.

5101 **Limitations on BTP use:** None

5102 **Other:** As for soap-http-1

5103 *Example using SOAP + Attachments binding*

```
5104 Content-Type: Multipart/Related; boundary=MIME_boundary;
5105 type=text/xml;
5106     start="someID"
5107 --MIME_boundary
5108 Content-Type: text/xml; charset=UTF-8
5109 Content-ID: someID
5110 <?xml version='1.0' ?>
5111 <soap:Envelope
5112     xmlns:soap="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
5113     soap:encodingStyle=" " >
5114   <soap:Header>
5115     <btp:messages xmlns:btp="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core">
5116       <btp:context superior-type="atom">
5117         <btp:superior-address>
5118           <btp:binding>soap-http-1</btp:binding>
5119           <btp:binding-address>
5120             http://client.example.com/soaphandler
5121           </btp:binding-address>
5122           </btp:superior-address>
5123           <btp:superior-
5124 identifier>http://example.com/1001</btp:superior-identifier>
5125         </btp:context>
5126       </btp:messages>
5127     </soap:Header>
5128     <soap:Body>
5129       <orderGoods href="cid:anotherID" />
5130     </soap:Body>
5131   </soap:Envelope>
5132 --MIME_boundary
5133 Content-Type: text/xml
5134 Content-ID: anotherID
5135   <ns1:orderGoods
5136 xmlns:ns1="http://example.com/2001/Services/xyzgoods">
5137     <custID>ABC8329045</custID>
5138     <itemID>224352</itemID>
5139     <quantity>5</quantity>
5140   </ns1:orderGoods>
5141 --MIME_boundary--
```

## 5143 **Conformance**

5144 A BTP implementation need not implement all aspects of the protocol to be useful. The level of  
5145 conformance of an implementation is defined by which roles it can support using the specified  
5146 messages and carrier protocol bindings for interoperation with other implementations.

5147 An implementation may implement some roles and relationships in accordance with this  
5148 specification, while providing the (approximate) functionality of other roles in some other  
5149 manner. (For example, an implementation might provide an equivalent of the control  
5150 relationships using a language-specific API, but support roles involved in the outcome

5151 relationships using standard BTP messages.) Such an implementation is conformant in respect of  
5152 the roles it does implement in accordance with this specification.

5153 An implementation can state which aspects of the BTP specification it conforms to in terms of  
5154 which Roles it supports. Since most Roles cannot usefully be supported in isolation, the following  
5155 Role Groups can be used to describe implementation capabilities:.

| <b>Role Group</b>           | <b>Roles</b>  |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <b>Initiator/Terminator</b> | Initiator<br>Terminator   |
| <b>Cohesive Hub</b>         | Factory<br>Composer (as Decider and Superior)<br>Coordinator (as Decider and Superior)<br>Sub-composer<br>Sub-coordinator |
| <b>Atomic Hub</b>           | Factory<br>Coordinator<br>Sub-coordinator   |
| <b>Cohesive Superior</b>    | Composer (as Superior only)<br>Sub-Composer<br>Coordinator (as Superior only)<br>Sub-coordinator                          |
| <b>Atomic Superior</b>      | Coordinator (as Superior only))<br>Sub-coordinator  |
| <b>Participant</b>          | Inferior<br>Enroller  |

5156  
5157 The Role Groups occupy different positions within a business transaction tree and thus require  
5158 presence of implementations supporting other Role Groups:

5159 Initiator/Terminator uses control relationship to Atomic Hub or Cohesive Hub to initiate  
5160 and control Atoms or Cohesions. Initiator/Terminator would typically be a library linked  
5161 with application software.

5162 Atomic Hub and Cohesive Hub would often be standalone servers.

5163 Cohesive Superior and Atomic Superior would provide the equivalent of  
5164 Initiator/Terminator functionality by internal or proprietary means.

5165 Cohesive Hubs, Atomic Hubs, Cohesive Superior and Atomic Superior use outcome  
5166 relationships to Participants and to each other.

5167 Participants will establish outcome relationships to implementations of any of the other  
5168 Role Groups except Initiator/Terminator. A Participant “covers” a resource or application  
5169 work of some kind. It should be noted that a Participant is unaffected by whether it is  
5170 enrolled in an Atom or Cohesion – it gets only a single outcome.

5171 An implementation may support one or more Role Groups. The following combinations are  
5172 defined as commonly expected conformance profiles, although other combinations or selections  
5173 are equally possible.

| <b>Conformance Profile</b>       | <b>Role Groups</b>   |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <b>Participant Only</b>          | Participant  |
| <b>Atomic</b>                    | Atomic Superior<br>Participant   |
| <b>Cohesive</b>                  | Cohesive Superior<br>Participant   |
| <b>Atomic Coordination Hub</b>   | Initiator/Terminator<br>Atomic <del>Coordination</del> -Hub<br>Participant   |
| <b>Cohesive Coordination Hub</b> | Initiator/Terminator<br>Cohesive <del>Coordination</del> -Hub<br>Participant |

5174

5175 BTP has several features, such as optional parameters, that allow alternative implementation  
5176 architectures. Implementations should pay particular attention to avoid assuming their peers have  
5177 made the same implementation options as they have (e.g. an implementation that always sends  
5178 ENROL with the same inferior address and with the “reply-address” absent (because the Inferior  
5179 in all transactions are dealt with by the same addressable entity), must not assume that the same is  
5180 true of received ENROLs)

5181

5181 **Part 3. Glossary**

5182

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Actor</b>                 | An entity that executes procedures, a software agent. (See also BTP Actor)  |
| <b>Address</b>               | An identifier for an endpoint.  |
| <b>Application</b>           | <p>An actor, which uses the Business Transaction Protocol (in the context of this specification).</p> <p>Also, a group of such actors, which may be distributed, that perform a common purpose.</p> <p>(When used in phrases such as “determined by the Application”, it is not relevant to BTP whether this is determined by the owner of a single system or is explicitly part of the contract that defines the distributed collaborative application. When it is necessary to distinguish the responsibilities of a single party, the term “Application element” is used.)</p> |
| <b>Application element</b>   | An actor that communicates, using application protocols, with other application elements, as part of an overall distributed application. A single system may contain more than one application element.   |
| <b>Application Endpoint</b>  | An endpoint of an application message.  |
| <b>Application Message</b>   | A message produced by an application element and consumed by an application element.  |
| <b>Application Operation</b> | An operation, which is started when an application message arrives.   |
| <b>Appropriate</b>           | In accordance with a pertinent contract or specification.   |
| <b>Atom</b>                  | A set of participants, which are the direct inferiors of a node (which may have only one member), all of which will receive instructions that will result in a homogeneous outcome. That is they will be issued instructions to all confirm or all cancel. (Transitively, a set of operations whose effect is capable of counter effect.)   |

**Atomic Business Transaction**

A complete business transaction that follows the atom rules for every node in the transaction tree over space and time, so that all the participants in the transaction will receive instructions that will result in a homogeneous outcome. That is they will be issued instructions to all confirm or all cancel. (Transitively, a set of operations whose effect is capable of counter effect.)

**Become prepared**

Ensure that of a set of procedures is capable of being successfully instructed to cancel or to confirm.

**BTP Actor**

A software entity, or agent, that is able to take part in Business Transaction Protocol exchanges i.e. that sends or receives BTP messages. A BTP Actor may be capable of only playing a single role, or of playing several different roles concurrently and / or sequentially. A BTP Actor may be involved in one, or more, transactions, concurrently and / or sequentially.

**BTP element**

A BTP actor that supports an application element (or elements) but is not itself concerned with application messages or semantics.

**(Business) Application Protocol**

The messages, their meanings and their permitted sequences used to effect a change in the state of a business relationship.

**(Business) application system**

A system that contains one, or more, business applications, and resources such as volatile and persistent storage for business state information. It may also contain other things such as an operating system and BTP elements.

**Business relationship agreement**

The contract and / or set of agreements that govern and constrain a business relationship between two, or more, parties.

**Business relationship**

A *business relationship* is any distributed state held by the parties, which is subject to contractual constraints agreed by those parties.

**Business Transaction Protocol (BTP)**

The messages, their meanings and their permitted sequences defined in this specification. Its purpose is to provide the interactions (or signalling) required to coordinate the effects of application protocol to achieve a business transaction.

**BTP-Address**

A compound address consisting of three parts. The first part, the “binding name”, identifies the binding to a particular carrier protocol – some bindings are specified in this document, others can be specified elsewhere. The second part of the address, the “binding address”, is meaningful to the carrier protocol itself, which will use it for the communication (i.e. it will permit a message to be delivered to a receiver). The third part, “additional information”, is not used or understood by the carrier protocol. The “additional information” may be a structured value.

**Business transaction**

A set of state changes that occur, or are desired, in computer systems controlled by some set of parties, and these changes are related in some application defined manner. A *business transaction* is subject to, and a part of, a *business relationship*. (BTP assumes that the parties involved in a *business transaction* have distinct and autonomous application systems, which do not require knowledge of each others’ implementation or internal state representations in volatile or persistent storage. Access to such loosely coupled systems is assumed to occur only through service interfaces.)

**Cancel**

Process a counter effect for the current effect of a set of procedures. There are a number of different ways that this may be achieved in practice.

**Carrier Protocol**

A protocol, which defines how the transmission of BTP messages occur.

**Carrier Protocol Address**

The address of an endpoint for a particular carrier protocol.

**(CPA)****Client**

An actor, which sends application messages to services.

**Cohesion**

A set of participants, which are the direct inferiors of a node that may receive instructions that may result in different outcomes for each participant. That is they will be issued instructions to confirm or cancel according to the application logic. Participants may resign or be instructed to cancel until the confirm set is fixed. Once the confirm set for a cohesion is fixed, then all participants in the confirm set are treated atomically. That is they will all be instructed to confirm unless one, or more, cancel in which case all will be instructed to cancel. All participants not in the confirm set will be instructed to cancel.



|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <b>Cohesive Business Transaction</b> | A complete business transaction for which at least one node over space and time follows the cohesion rules. The other nodes in the transaction tree of a cohesive business transaction may follow either the cohesion rules or the atom rules.   |
| <b>Confirm</b>                       | Ensure that the effect of a set of procedures is completed. There are a number of different ways that this may be achieved in practice.  |
| <b>Context</b>                       | Information pertinent to a single transaction, or branch of a transaction.   |
| <b>Contract</b>                      | Any rule, agreement or promise which constrains an actor's behaviour and is known to any other actor, and upon which any other knowing actor may rely.   |
| <b>Control relationship</b>          | The application element:BTP element relationships that create the nodes of the transaction tree (Initiator:Factory) and drive the completion (Terminator:Decider).   |
| <b>Coordinator</b>                   | A BTP actor, which is the top 'node' of a transaction and decides the outcome of its immediate branches according to the atom rules defined in this specification. It has a lifetime, which is coincident with that of the atom. A coordinator can issue instructions to prepare, cancel and confirm. These instructions take the form of BTP messages. A coordinator is identified by its transaction-identifier. A coordinator must also have a BTP Address to which participants can send BTP messages. |
| <b>Counter effect</b>                | An appropriate effect intended to counteract a prior effect.   |
| <b>Counter effect contract</b>       | The contract, which governs the relationship between the effect and the counter effect of a procedure. In the absence of any other overriding contracts the counter effect contract is the promise that the <b>Counter effect</b> will attempt so far as is possible to reverse or cancel the <b>Effect</b> such that an observer (on completion of the <b>Counter effect</b> ) is unaware that the <b>Effect</b> ever occurred, but this attempt cannot be guaranteed to succeed.                         |

|                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| <b>Decider</b>             | <p>The top node of a transaction tree, a composer or a coordinator (so called because the Terminator can only request confirmation – the Decider makes the final determination). The term can always be interpreted as “Composer or Coordinator”.</p> <p>It is the role at the other end of a control relationship to a Terminator.</p>  |
| <b>Delivery parameter</b>  | <p>A parameter of an abstract message that is concerned with the transmission of the message to its target or the transmission of an immediate reply.. Distinguished from Payload parameter.</p>   |
| <b>Effect</b>              | <p>The changes induced by the incomplete or complete processing of a set of procedures by an actor, which are observable by another contemporary or future actor, and which are made in conformance with a contract known to any such observer. This contract must state the counter effect of the effect, and this is known as a counter effect contract. An effect is <b>Completed</b> when the change inducing processing of the set of procedures is finished.</p> |
| <b>Endpoint</b>            | <p>A sender or receiver.</p>   |
| <b>Enroller</b>            | <p>The BTP Actor role that informs a superior of the existence of an inferior.</p>   |
| <b>Factory</b>             | <p>The BTP Actor role that creates transaction contexts and deciders.</p>  |
| <b>Inappropriate</b>       | <p>In violation of a pertinent contract or specification.</p>  |
| <b>Ineffectual</b>         | <p>Describes a set of procedures, which has no effect.</p>   |
| <b>Inferior</b>            | <p>The end of end of a BTP node to BTP node relationship governed by the outcome protocol that is topologically further from the top of the transaction tree.</p>  |
| <b>Inferior-Address</b>    | <p>The address used to communicate with an actor playing the role of an Inferior.</p>  |
| <b>Inferior-identifier</b> | <p>A globally unambiguous identification of a particular Inferior within a single transaction (represented as an URI or equivalent).</p>   |
| <b>Initiator</b>           | <p>The BTP Actor role (an application element) that starts a transaction.</p>  |

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <b>Intermediate</b>         | A node that is a sub-composer or a sub-coordinator. An alternative term to interposed.  |
| <b>Interposed</b>           | A node that is a sub-composer or a sub-coordinator. An alternative term to intermediate.  |
| <b>Message</b>              | A datum, which is produced and then consumed.   |
| <b>Node</b>                 | A logical entity that is associated with a single transaction. A node is a composer, a coordinator, a sub-coordinator, a sub-composer, or a participant.  |
| <b>Operation</b>            | A procedure, which is started by a receiver when a message arrives at it.   |
| <b>Outcome</b>              | A decision to either cancel or confirm.   |
| <b>Outcome relationship</b> | The Superior:Inferior relationship (i.e. between BTP actors within the transaction tree) and the Enroller:Superior relationship used in establishing it.  |
| <b>Participant</b>          | A participant is part of an application system that also contains one, or more, applications, which manipulate resources. It is a role of a BTP Actor that is (or is equivalent to) a set of procedures, which is capable of receiving instructions from another BTP Actor to prepare, cancel and confirm. These signals are used by the application(s) to determine whether to effect (confirm) or counter effect (cancel) the results of application operations. A participant must also have a BTP Address, to which these instructions will be delivered, in the form of BTP messages. A participant is identified by an inferior-identifier. |
| <b>Payload parameter</b>    | A parameter of an abstract message that is will be received and processed or retained by the receiving BTP actor. The various identifier parameters are considered Payload parameters . Distinguished from Delivery parameter.  |
| <b>Peer</b>                 | The other party in a two-party relationship, as in Superior to Inferior, or Sender to Receiver.   |
| <b>Provisional Effect</b>   | The changes induced by the incomplete or complete processing of a set of procedures by an actor, which are subject to later completion or counter-effecting. The provisional effect may or may not be observable by other actors.   |
| <b>Receiver</b>             | The consumer of a message.  |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Relationship parties</b>  | The legal entities that enter into an agreement that forms the basis of the relationship.   |
| <b>Responders-identifier</b> | An identifier carried in a BTP message that can be interpreted as transaction-identifier, a superior-identifier, or an inferior-identifier according to the nature of the role in a BTP actor that is responding to a received message.   |
| <b>Role</b>                  | The participation of a software agent in a particular relationship in a particular business transaction. The software agent performing a role is termed an <b>Actor</b> .   |
| <b>Sender</b>                | The producer of a message.  |
| <b>Service</b>               | An actor (an application element), which on receipt of application messages, may start an appropriate application operation. For example, a process that advertises an interface allowing defined RPCs (remote procedure calls) to be invoked by a remote client.   |
| <b>Status requestor</b>      | The BTP Actor role that requests the status of another BTP actor.   |
| <b>Sub-composer</b>          | An actor, which is not the top 'node' of a transaction. It receives an outcome from its superior and decides the outcome of its immediate branches according to the cohesive rules defined in this specification. It has a lifetime, which is coincident with that of the cohesion. A sub-composer can issue instructions to prepare, cancel and confirm on individual branches. These instructions take the form of BTP messages. A sub-composer must also have at least one BTP Address to which lower nodes can send BTP messages. |
| <b>Sub-coordinator</b>       | An actor, which is not the top 'node' of a transaction. It receives an outcome from its superior and propagates the outcome to its immediate branches according to the atom rules defined in this specification. It has a lifetime, which is coincident with that of this atom. A sub-coordinator can issue instructions to prepare, cancel and confirm. These instructions take the form of BTP messages. A sub-coordinator must also have at least one BTP Address to which lower nodes can send BTP messages.                      |

|                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| <b>Superior</b>            | <p>The BTP role that will accept enrolments of Inferiors and subsequently inform the Inferior of the Outcome applicable to it.</p> <p>A Superior will be one of Composer, Coordinator, Sub-composer, or Sub-coordinator.</p> <p>A Superior is considered to be a Superior even if it currently has no enrolled Inferiors.</p>   |
| <b>Superior-address</b>    | <p>The set of BTP-addresses used to communicate with an actor playing the role of a Superior.</p>   |
| <b>Superior-identifier</b> | <p>A globally unambiguous identifier of a particular Superior within a particular transaction (represented as an URI or equivalent).</p>  |
| <b>Target-identifier</b>   | <p>An identifier carried in a BTP message that can be interpreted as transaction-identifier, a superior-identifier, or an inferior identifier according to the nature of the role in a BTP actor that receives this identifier.</p>   |
| <b>Terminator</b>          | <p>A BTP role performed by an Application element communicating with a Decider to control the completion of the Business Transaction. Frequently will be identical to the Initiator, but distinguished because the control of the Business Transaction can be passed between Application elements.</p>  |
| <b>Transaction</b>         | <p>A complete unit of work as defined by an application. A transaction starts when a part of the distributed transaction first initiates some work that is to be a part of a new transaction. The transaction tree may grow and shrink over time and (logical) space. A transaction completes when all the participants in a transaction have completed (that is have replied to their confirm or cancel instruction).</p>  |
| <b>Transaction tree</b>    | <p>A pattern of BTP nodes that provides the coordination of a distributed application transaction. There is single top node (a Decider) that interacts with the initiating application (which is a part of a distributed application). The Decider node has one, or more outcome relationships with other BTP nodes (sub-composer, sub-coordinator, or participant nodes). Any intermediate nodes (Sub-composer or Sub-coordinator nodes) have exactly one relationship up the tree in which they act as Inferior, and one, or more, relationships down the tree in which they act as Superior. Participants are leaves of the tree. That is they have exactly one relationship up the tree in which they act as Inferior and no down tree relationships.</p> |

**Transaction-identifier**

A globally unambiguous identifier for a particular a Decider(represented as an URI or equivalent). A Decider is the top 'node' of the transaction and thus this identifier also unambiguously identifies the transaction. Often identical to the Superior-identifier of the Decider in its role as Superior, though the protocol does not require this.

**Transmission**

The passage of a message from a sender to a receiver.

5183

5184

5184

## Part 4. Annexes

5185

### Informational annex A Node State Information Serialisation

5186

This Annex provides a simple, but standardised format for the serialised essential state information of a node. It does not specify the events that would cause serialisation to take place, nor does it specify how this serialisation format is extracted from a node and transferred elsewhere. The format is specified in abstract form and as an XML Schema.

5187

5188

5189

5190

#### NODE STATE INFORMATION

5191

##### Abstract Format for Node State Information

5192

The node state information represents the BTP state information for a single BTP node in some transaction tree. It contains information for a single transaction that was extant at the node at the time the serialisation was performed.

5193

5194

| <u>Parameter</u>                      | <u>Sub-Parameter</u>                 | <u>Type</u>  |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| <u>date and time</u>                  |                                      | <u>Date and Time</u>   |
| <u>Role</u>                           |                                      | <u>composer/coordinator/sub-composer/sub-coordinator/participant</u> |
| <u>own information</u>                | <u>transaction type</u>              | <u>cohesion/atom</u>   |
|                                       | <u>own-identifier</u>                | <u>Identifier</u>  |
|                                       | <u>own-address</u>                   | <u>Set of BTP addresses</u>  |
| <u>information as inferior</u>        | <u>transaction type</u>              | <u>cohesion/atom</u>   |
|                                       | <u>inferior-state-identification</u> | <u>State identifier</u>  |
|                                       | <u>superior's identifier</u>         | <u>Identifier</u>  |
|                                       | <u>superior's address</u>            | <u>Set of BTP addresses</u>  |
|                                       | <u>Qualifiers</u>                    | <u>List of qualifiers</u>  |
| <u>Set of information as superior</u> | <u>superior-state-identification</u> | <u>State identifier</u>  |
|                                       | <u>inferior's identifier</u>         | <u>Identifier</u>  |
|                                       | <u>inferior's address</u>            | <u>Set of BTP addresses</u>  |
|                                       | <u>Qualifiers</u>                    | <u>List of qualifiers</u>  |

5195

5196

date and time the date and time that this node state information was generated to an agreed resolution and accuracy. The presence of this information is optional.

5197

5198 role the type of the node. Its value is one of composer / coordinator / sub-composer / sub-  
5199 coordinator / participant.

5200 own information identification information for this node. This information is required. It  
5201 consists of the following information:

5202 transaction type the type of this part of the transaction propagated to inferiors. Its  
5203 value is one of cohesion or atom.

5204 own identifier identifies this node. This may be the superior identifier from the  
5205 CONTEXT for the node and/or the inferior identifier on the ENROL for the node.  
5206 This shall be globally unambiguous.

5207 own address the address at which this node may be accessible. This can be a set of  
5208 alternative addresses.

5209 information as inferior information relevant to the node's role as an inferior. Should be  
5210 present, once only, if the node is a sub-composer or a sub-coordinator or a participant,  
5211 otherwise absent. It includes information about the superior of this node and consists  
5212 of the following information:

5213 transaction type the type of this part of the transaction that applies to the node acting  
5214 as an inferior as indicated in the CONTEXT for the node. Its value is one of cohesion  
5215 or atom.

5216 inferior-state-identification identifies the state of the inferior state machine at this  
5217 node. This is represented as a small letter followed by a number, which designates the  
5218 inferior state. Refer to the section on 'State Tables' and in particular Tables 6 and 11 -  
5219 14.

5220 superior's identifier identifies the Superior of this node. This shall be globally  
5221 unambiguous.

5222 superior's address the address to which ENROL and other messages from this  
5223 enrolled Inferior were sent. This can be a set of alternative addresses.

5224 qualifiers list of the qualifiers and their values in force for this node as an inferior.

5225 set of information as superior information relevant to the node's role as superior.  
5226 Should be present, if the node is a composer, coordinator, sub-composer, or a sub-  
5227 coordinator, and shall be absent if the node is a participant. It may be present multiple  
5228 times, once for each inferior that this node has a relationship with. It includes  
5229 information about an inferior of this node and consists of the following information:

5230 superior-state-identification identifies the state of the superior state machine for this  
5231 particular inferior. This is represented as a capital letter followed by a number, which  
5232 designates the superior state. Refer to the section on 'State Tables' and in particular  
5233 Tables 7 and 7 - 10.

5234 inferior's identifier identifies an Inferior of this node. This shall be globally  
5235 unambiguous.

5236 inferior's address the address to which PREPARE, CONFIRM, CANCEL and  
5237 SUPERIOR STATE messages for this Inferior have been or are to be sent. This can  
5238 be a set of alternative addresses.



5239 [qualifiers](#) list of the qualifiers and their values in force for this node as superior to this  
5240 [inferior](#).

## 5241 [Informal XML for Node State Information](#)

```
5242 <btpst:node-information>
5243
5244   <btpst:date-time>2002-05-31T13:20:00.000-05:00</btpst:date-time>?
5245
5246   <btpst:role>composer|coordinator|sub-composer|sub-
5247   coordinator|participant</btpst:role>?
5248
5249   <btpst:own-information>
5250     <btpst:trx-type>cohesion|atom</btpst:trx-type>
5251     <btpst:own-identifier>...URI...</btpst:own-identifier>
5252     <btpst:own-address> +
5253       <btp:binding-name>...carrier binding name...</btp:binding-name>
5254       <btp:binding-address>...carrier specific address...</btp:binding-
5255   address>
5256       <btp:additional-information>...optional additional addressing
5257   information...</btp:additional-information> ?
5258     </btpst:own-address>
5259   </btpst:own-information>
5260
5261   <btpst:information-as-inferior> ?
5262     <btpst:trx-type>cohesion|atom</btpst:trx-type>
5263     <btpst:I_state>.. statename from inferior state table e.g.
5264   dl..</btpst:I_state>
5265     <btpst:superiors-identifier>...URI...</btpst:superiors-identifier>
5266     <btpst:superiors-address> +
5267       <btp:binding-name>...carrier binding name...</btp:binding-name>
5268       <btp:binding-address>...carrier specific address...</btp:binding-
5269   address>
5270       <btp:additional-information>...optional additional addressing
5271   information...</btp:additional-information> ?
5272     </btpst:superiors-address>
5273     <btp:qualifiers> ...qualifiers... </btp:qualifiers> ?
5274   </btpst:information-as-inferior>
5275
5276   <btpst:information-as-superior> +
5277     <btpst:S_state>.. statename from superior state table e.g.
5278   D1..</btpst:S_state>
5279     <btpst:inferiors-identifier>...URI...</btpst:inferiors-identifier>
5280     <btpst:inferiors-address> +
5281       <btp:binding-name>...carrier binding name...</btp:binding-name>
5282       <btp:binding-address>...carrier specific address...</btp:binding-
5283   address>
5284       <btp:additional-information>...optional additional addressing
5285   information...</btp:additional-information> ?
5286     </btpst:inferiors-address>
5287     <btp:qualifiers> ...qualifiers... </btp:qualifiers> ?
5288   </btpst:information-as-superior>
5289
5290 </btpst:node-information>
```

5291 [XML schema for Node State Information](#)

```
5292 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
5293 <schema
5294   xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
5295   targetNamespace="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:node_state_information"
5296   xmlns:btst="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:node_state_information"
5297   xmlns:btpq="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:qualifiers"
5298   xmlns:btp="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core"
5299   elementFormDefault="qualified">
5300
5301   <import namespace="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:qualifiers"/>
5302   <import namespace="urn:oasis:names:tc:BTP:1.0:core"/>
5303
5304
5305   <!-- Main node - information element definition -->
5306
5307   <element name="node-information">
5308     <complexType>
5309       <sequence>
5310
5311         <element name="date-time" type="dateTime" minOccurs="0"/>
5312
5313         <element name="role" minOccurs="0">
5314           <simpleType>
5315             <restriction base="string">
5316               <enumeration value="composer"/>
5317               <enumeration value="coordinator"/>
5318               <enumeration value="sub-Composer"/>
5319               <enumeration value="sub-Coordinator"/>
5320               <enumeration value="participant"/>
5321             </restriction>
5322           </simpleType>
5323         </element>
5324
5325         <element name="own-information">
5326           <complexType>
5327             <sequence>
5328               <element ref="btst:trx-type"/>
5329               <element name="own-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5330               <element name="own-address" type="btp:address" minOccurs="1"
5331               maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
5332             </sequence>
5333           </complexType>
5334         </element>
5335
5336         <element name="information-as-inferior" minOccurs="0">
5337           <complexType>
5338             <sequence>
5339               <element ref="btst:trx-type"/>
5340               <element name="I_state">
5341                 <simpleType>
5342                   <restriction base="string">
5343                     <pattern value="[a-z][0-9]"/>
5344                   </restriction>

```

```

5345     </simpleType>
5346   </element>
5347   <element name="superiors-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5348   <element name="superiors-address" type="btp:address" minOccurs="1"
5349 maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
5350     <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5351   </sequence>
5352 </complexType>
5353 </element>
5354
5355 <element name="information-as-superior" minOccurs="0"
5356 maxOccurs="unbounded">
5357   <complexType>
5358     <sequence>
5359       <element name="S_state">
5360         <simpleType>
5361           <restriction base="string">
5362             <pattern value="[A-Z][0-9]"/>
5363           </restriction>
5364         </simpleType>
5365       </element>
5366       <element name="inferiors-identifier" type="btp:identifier"/>
5367       <element name="inferiors-address" type="btp:address" minOccurs="1"
5368 maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
5369         <element ref="btp:qualifiers" minOccurs="0"/>
5370     </sequence>
5371   </complexType>
5372 </element>
5373
5374 </sequence>
5375 </complexType>
5376 </element>
5377
5378 <!-- Common elements and datatypes -->
5379
5380 <element name="trx-type">
5381   <simpleType>
5382     <restriction base="string">
5383       <enumeration value="atom"/>
5384       <enumeration value="cohesion"/>
5385     </restriction>
5386   </simpleType>
5387 </element>
5388
5389 </schema>
5390

```